# Nonlinear gyrokinetic equation 

Youjun Hu<br>Institute of Plasma Physics, Chinese Academy of Sciences<br>Email: yjhu@ipp.cas.cn

June 1, 2023


#### Abstract

The nonlinear gyrokinetic equation in Frieman-Chen's paper [3] is re-derived in this note, with more details. Numerical implementation of the gyrokinetic model using the PIC method is also discussed.


## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Gyrokinetic?

It is widely believed that low-frequency (lower than ion cyclotron frequency) electromagnetic perturbations are more important than high-frequency ones in transporting plasma in tokamaks, based on some non-conclusive observations and analytical theories. (This assumption can be verified numerically when we are able to do a full simulation including both low-frequency and high-frequency perturbations. This kind of verification is not possible at present due to the difficulties in doing a full simulation.) If we assume that only low-frequency perturbations are present, the Vlasov equation can be simplified. Specifically, symmetry of the perturbed particle distribution function in the phase space can be established if we choose suitable coordinates (independent variables) and split the distribution function in a proper way. The symmetry is along the so-called gyro-angle $\alpha$ in the guiding-center coordinates ( $\left.\mathbf{X}, \mu, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$. In obtaining the equation for the gyro-angle independent part of the distribution function, we need to average the coefficients of the equation over the gyro-angle $\alpha$ and thus this model is called "gyrokinetic".

In deriving the gyrokinetic equation, the perturbed electromagnetic field is assumed to be known and of low-frequency. To do a kinetic simulation, we need to solve the field equation to obtain the perturbed electromagnetic field. It is still possible that high frequency modes (e.g., compressional Alfven waves and $\Omega_{H}$ modes) appear in a gyrokinetic simulation. If the amplitude of high frequency modes is large, then the simulation is not valid since the gyrokinetic model is invalid in this case.

### 1.2 Vlasov equation and guiding-center coordinates

The Vlasov equation in terms of particle coordinates ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ) is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{x}}+\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f=f(t, \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ is the particle distribution function, $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are the location and velocity of particles. The distribution function $f$ depends on 6 phase-space variables ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ), in addition to the time $t$.

Choose Cartesian coordinates $(x, y, z)$ for the configuration space $\mathbf{x}$. Consider a simple case where the electromagnetic field is a time-independent field given by $\mathbf{B}=B_{0}(x, y, z) \hat{\mathbf{z}}$ and $\mathbf{E}=0$. Let us examine the Vlasov equation in this case and look whether there is any coordinate system that can reduce the dimensionality of the Vlasov equation.

Describe the velocity space using a right-handed cylindrical coordinates ( $v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}$), where $v_{\|}=\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\|}, \mathbf{e}_{\|}=\mathbf{e}_{z}$ is the unit vector along the magnetic field, $\alpha$ is the azimuthal angle of the velocity relative to $\mathbf{e}_{x}$.

In $\left(x, y, z, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$coordinates, the gradient in velocity space, $\partial f / \partial \mathbf{v}$, is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}}=\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\perp}} \mathbf{e}_{1}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\|}} \mathbf{e}_{z}+\frac{1}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \mathbf{e}_{\alpha} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{e}_{1}=\mathbf{v}_{\perp} /\left|\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right|, \mathbf{v}_{\perp}=\mathbf{v}-\left(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{z}\right) \mathbf{e}_{z}$, and $\mathbf{e}_{\alpha}=\mathbf{e}_{z} \times \mathbf{e}_{1}$. Using Eq. (2), $\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}}$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} & =\frac{q}{m}\left(v_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{1} \times \mathbf{B}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\perp}} \mathbf{e}_{1}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\|}} \mathbf{e}_{z}+\frac{1}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}\right) \\
& =\frac{q}{m}\left(v_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{1} \times \mathbf{B}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{1}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}\right) \\
& =\frac{B_{0} q}{m} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha}\left(\mathbf{e}_{1} \times \mathbf{e}_{z}\right) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\alpha} \\
& =-\Omega\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha}\right) \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\Omega=B_{0} q / m$ is the gyro-frequency. Then the Vlasov equation (1) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{x}}-\Omega \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha}=0 \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}+v_{\perp} \cos \alpha \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}+v_{\perp} \sin \alpha \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}-\Omega \frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha}=0 \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define the following coordinates transform (guiding-center transform):

$$
\left\{\begin{array} { l } 
{ x ^ { \prime } = x + \frac { v _ { \perp } \operatorname { s i n } \alpha } { \Omega } , }  \tag{6}\\
{ y ^ { \prime } = y - \frac { v _ { \perp } \operatorname { c o s } \alpha } { \Omega } , } \\
{ z ^ { \prime } = z , } \\
{ \alpha ^ { \prime } = \alpha , } \\
{ v _ { \| } ^ { \prime } = v _ { \| } , } \\
{ v _ { \perp } ^ { \prime } = v _ { \perp } , } \\
{ t ^ { \prime } = t }
\end{array} \quad \text { its inverse } \Rightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}
x=x^{\prime}-\frac{v_{\perp}^{\prime} \sin \alpha^{\prime}}{\Omega}, \\
y=y^{\prime}+\frac{v_{\perp}^{\prime} \cos \alpha^{\prime}}{\Omega}, \\
z=z^{\prime}, \\
\alpha=\alpha^{\prime} \\
v_{\|}=v_{\|}^{\prime}, \\
v_{\perp}=v_{\perp^{\prime}}, \\
t=t^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.\right.
$$

Then the partial derivative $\partial f / \partial \alpha^{\prime}$ in the new coordinates $\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, t^{\prime}\right)$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right|_{x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}}=\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}} \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in the new coordinate system, $\Omega$ depends on $\alpha^{\prime}$. Here we assume that the magnetic field $B_{0}$ is weakly inhomogeneous. Specifically, we assume that the scale length of $B_{0}$ is much
larger than the gyro-radius $\left|v_{\perp} / \Omega\right|$. Using this assumption, $\Omega$ is then approximately independent of $\alpha^{\prime}$ (this corresponds to neglecting the gradient drift). Then expression (7) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right|_{x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}} & =-\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \frac{1}{\Omega} v_{\perp}^{\prime} \cos \alpha^{\prime}-\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \frac{1}{\Omega} v_{\perp}^{\prime} \sin \alpha^{\prime}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \\
& =-\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \frac{1}{\Omega} v_{\perp} \cos \alpha-\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \frac{1}{\Omega} v_{\perp} \sin \alpha+\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha} \tag{8}
\end{align*}
$$

Similarly, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\|}^{\prime}}=\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\|}} \tag{9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t^{\prime}}=\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Use expressions (8), (9), and (10), then Eq. (5) is written, in the new coordinate system, as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t^{\prime}}+v_{\|}^{\prime} \frac{\partial f}{\partial z^{\prime}}-\Omega\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right)=0 \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

(Note that the derivative $\partial f / \partial \alpha^{\prime}$ in the new coordinate system incorporate three derivatives in the original coordinate system, namely, $\partial f / \partial x, \partial f / \partial y$, and $\partial f / \partial \alpha$.)

Define gyro-phase averaging operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\ldots\rangle \equiv(2 \pi)^{-1} \int_{0}^{2 \pi}(\ldots) d \alpha \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then averaging Eq. 11) over $\alpha$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t^{\prime}}+v_{\|}^{\prime} \frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial z^{\prime}}-(2 \pi)^{-1} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \Omega\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right) d \alpha=0 \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

As is assumed above, $\Omega$ is approximately independent of $\alpha^{\prime}$ and thus $\Omega$ in Eq. 13 can be moved outside of the gyro-angle integration, giving

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t^{\prime}}+v_{\|}^{\prime} \frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial z^{\prime}}-\Omega(2 \pi)^{-1} \int_{0}^{2 \pi}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right) d \alpha=0 \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Peforming the integration, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t^{\prime}}+v_{\|}^{\prime} \frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial z^{\prime}}-\Omega(2 \pi)^{-1}\left[f\left(\alpha^{\prime}=2 \pi\right)-f\left(\alpha^{\prime}=0\right)\right]=0 \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\alpha^{\prime}=2 \pi$ and $\alpha^{\prime}=0$ correspond to the same phase space location, the corresponding values of the distribution function must be equal. Then the above equation reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t^{\prime}}+v_{\|}^{\prime} \frac{\partial\langle f\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial z^{\prime}}=0 \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is an equation for the gyro-angle independent part of the distribution function.
Next let us investigate whether the guiding-center transform can be made use of to simplify the kinetic equation for more general cases where we have a (weakly) non-uniform static magnetic field of varying direction, plus electromagnetic perturbations of low frequency (and of small amplitude and $k_{\|} \rho_{i} \ll 1$ ). And we will include the effect that $\mathbf{B}_{0}$ depends on $\alpha^{\prime}$, i.e., grad-B and curvature drift.

## 2 Transform Vlasov equation from particle coordinates to guiding-center coordinates

Next, we define the guiding-center transform and then we transform the Vlasov equation from the particle coordinates ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ) to the guiding-center coordinates, i.e., express the gradient operators $\partial / \partial \mathbf{x}$ and $\partial / \partial \mathbf{v}$ in terms of the guiding-center coordinates.

### 2.1 Guiding-center transformation

In a magnetic field, given a particle location and velocity ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ), we know how to calculate its guiding-center location $\mathbf{X}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{X}(\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{v})=\mathrm{x}+\mathbf{v} \times \frac{e_{\|}(\mathrm{x})}{\Omega(\mathrm{x})} \tag{17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}=\mathbf{B}_{0} / B_{0}, \Omega=q B_{0} / m, \mathbf{B}_{0}=\mathbf{B}_{0}(\mathbf{x})$ is the equilibrium (macroscopic) magnetic field at the particle position. We will consider Eq. (17) as a transform and call it guiding-center transform [1]. Note that the transform (17) involves both position and velocity of particles.

For later use, define $\rho \equiv-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega$, which is the vector gyro-radius pointing from the the guiding-center to the particle position.

Given ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ), it is straightforward to obtain $\mathbf{X}$ by using Eq. 17). On the other hand, the inverse transform, i.e., given ( $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}$ ), to find $\mathbf{x}$, which is in principle not easy because $\Omega$ and $\mathbf{e}_{\|}$ depend on $\mathbf{x}$, which usually requires solving for the root of a nonlinear equation. Numerically, one can use

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}_{n+1}=\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}\left(\mathbf{x}_{n}\right)}{\Omega\left(\mathbf{x}_{n}\right)}, \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

as an iteration scheme to compute $\mathbf{x}$, with the initial guess chosen as $\mathbf{x}_{0}=\mathbf{X}$. The equilibrium magnetic field we will consider has spatial scale length much larger than the thermal gyro radius $\rho$. In this case the difference between the values of $\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x}) / \Omega(\mathbf{x})$ and $\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X}) / \Omega(\mathbf{X})$ is small and thus can be neglected. Then the inverse guiding-center transform can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x} \approx \mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{e_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} \tag{19}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can also be considered as using the iterative scheme to computer $\mathbf{x}$ with initial guess of $\mathbf{x}$ being $\mathbf{X}$ and stopping at the first iteration. [The difference between equilibrium field values evaluated at $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ is usually neglected in gyrokinetic theory. Therefore it does not matter whether the above $\mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega$ is evaluated at $\mathbf{x}$ or $\mathbf{X}$. What matters is where the perturbed fields are evaluated: at $\mathbf{x}$ or at $\mathbf{X}$. The values of perturbed fields at $\mathbf{x}$ or at $\mathbf{X}$ are different and this is called the finite Larmor radius (FLR) effect, which is almost all that the gyrokinetic theory is about.]

The inverse guiding-center transformation (19) needs to be performed numerically in gyrokinetic PIC simulations when we deposit markers to grids or when we calculate the gyro-averaged field to be used in pushing guiding-centers.

### 2.2 Choosing velocity coordinates

The guiding-center transformations (17) and involve the particle velocity $\mathbf{v}$. It is the cross product between $\mathbf{v}$ and $\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})$ or $\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})$ that is actually used. Therefore, only the perpendicular velocity (which is defined by $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}=\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\|}$) enters the transform. A natural choice of coordinates
for the perpendicular velocity is $\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha\right)$, where $v_{\perp}=\left|\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right|$ and $\alpha$ is the azimuthal angle of the perpendicular velocity in the local perpendicular plane.

The parallel direction is fully determined by $\mathbf{B}_{0}(\mathbf{x})$, but there are degrees of freedom in choosing one of the two perpendicular basis vectors. In order to make the azimuthal angle $\alpha$ fully defined, we need to choose a way to define one of the two perpendicular directions. In GEM simulations, one of the perpendicular direction is chosen as the direction perpendicular to the magnetic surface, which is fully determined at each spatial point. (We need to define the perpendicular direction at each spatial location to make $\partial \alpha /\left.\partial \mathbf{x}\right|_{\mathbf{v}}$ defined, which is needed in the Vlasov differential operators. However, it seems that terms related to $\partial \alpha /\left.\partial \mathbf{x}\right|_{\mathbf{v}}$ are finally dropped due to that they are of higher order**check.)

In the following, $\alpha$ will be called the "gyro-angle" . [Note that, in the guiding-center coordinates $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}, \alpha\right), \alpha$ is a velocity coordinate rather than a spatial coordinate. When transformed back to particle coordinates, $\alpha$ is both a velocity coordinate and a spatial coordinate. Consider a series of points in terms of guiding-center coordinates ( $\left.\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}, \alpha\right)$ with $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}\right)$ fixed but with $\alpha$ changing. Using the inverse guiding-center transform (19), we know that the above points form a gyro-ring in space, i.e., $\alpha$ influences both particle velocity and location.]

The gyro-angle is an important variable we will stick to because we need to directly perform averaging over this variable (with $\mathbf{X}$ fixed) in deriving the gyrokinetic equation. We have more than one choice for the remaining velocity coordinates, such as $\left(v, v_{\|}\right)$, or $\left(v, v_{\perp}\right)$, or $\left(v_{\|}, v_{\perp}\right)$. In Frieman-Chen's paper, the velocity coordinates other than $\alpha$ are chosen to be $(\varepsilon, \mu)$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon=\varepsilon(v, \mathbf{x}) \equiv \frac{v^{2}}{2}+\frac{q \Phi_{0}(\mathbf{x})}{m} \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu=\mu\left(v_{\perp}, \mathbf{x}\right) \equiv \frac{v_{\perp}^{2}}{2 B_{0}(\mathbf{x})}, \tag{21}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Phi_{0}(\mathbf{x})$ is the equilibrium (macroscopic) electrical potential. Choosing $\mu$ as one of the phase space coordinates is nontrivial because it turns out a constant of motion. And this choice is important in sucessfully getting the final gyrokinetic equation (I need to think about this).

Note that $(\varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$ is not sufficient in uniquely determining a velocity vector. An additional parameter $\sigma=\operatorname{sign}\left(v_{\|}\right)$is needed to determine the sign of $v_{\|}=\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\|}$. In the following, the dependence of the distribution function on $\sigma$ is often not explicitly shown in the variable list (i.e., $\sigma$ is hidden/suppressed), which, however, does not mean that the distribution function is independent of $\sigma$.

Another frequently used velocity coordinates are ( $\mu, v_{\|}, \alpha$ ). In the following, I will derive the gyrokinetic equation in $(\varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$ coordinates. After that, I transform it to ( $\mu, v_{\|}, \alpha$ ) coordinates.

One important thing to note about the above velocity coordinates is that they are defined relative to the local magnetic field. If the field itself is spatially varying (such as in tokamaks), the above velocity coordinates are also spatially varying for a fixed velocity v. Specifically, the following derivatives are nonzero:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}},\left.\frac{\partial v_{\perp}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}},\left.\frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}},\left.\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}} \tag{22}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.3 Summary of the phase-space coordinate transform

The transform from particle variables $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ to guiding-center variables $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha, \sigma)$ is given by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v} \times \frac{e_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}  \tag{23}\\
\varepsilon(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\frac{|\mathbf{v}|^{2}}{2}+\frac{q \Phi_{0}(\mathbf{x})}{m} \\
\mu(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\frac{\left|\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})\right|^{2}}{2 B_{0}(\mathbf{x})} \\
\alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\left(\operatorname{angle} \text { between } \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \text { and local } \mathbf{e}_{\perp}\right) \\
\sigma(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\operatorname{sign}\left(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

As mentioned above, the dependence of the distribution function on $\sigma$ will not be explicitly indicated in the following.

### 2.4 Distribution function in terms of guiding-center variables

Denote the particle distribution function expressed in particle coordinates $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ by $f_{p}$, and the same distribution expressed in the guiding-center variables $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$ by $f_{g}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)=f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \tag{24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ) and $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$ are related to each other by the guiding-center transform (19). Equation (24) along the guiding-center transform can be considered as the definition of $f_{g}$. (If $f_{g}$ is independent of $\alpha$, then, using the inverse guiding-center transform, we know that $f_{p}$ is constant along the spatial gyro-ring with velocity direction changing according to the gyro-phase.)

As is conventionally adopted in multi-variables calculus, both $f_{p}$ and $f_{g}$ are often denoted by the same symbol, say $f$. Which set of independent variables (particle variables or guiding-center variables) are actually assumed is inferred from the context. This is one of the subtle things needed to note for gyrokinetic theory in particular and for multi-variables calculus in general. (Sometimes, it may be better to use subscript notation on $f$ to identify which coordinates are assumed. One example where this distinguishing is important is encountered when we try to express the diamagnetic flow in terms of $f_{g}$, which is discussed in Appendix B )

In practice, $f_{g}$ is often called the guiding-center distribution function whereas $f_{p}$ is called the particle distribution function. However, they are actually the same distribution function expressed in different variables. The name "guiding-center distribution function" is misleading because it may imply that we can count the number of guiding-centers to obtain this distribution function but this implication is wrong.

### 2.5 Spatial gradient operator in guiding-center coordinates

Using the chain-rule, the spatial gradient $\partial f_{p} / \partial \mathbf{x}$ is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the definition of $\mathbf{X}$, Eq. 17, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=\mathbf{I}+\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \tag{26}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the unit dyad. From the definition of $\varepsilon$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{E}_{0}=-\partial \Phi_{0} / \partial \mathbf{x}$. Using the above results, equation (25) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}}=\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right] \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

As mentioned above, the partial derivative $\partial / \partial \mathbf{x}$ is taken by holding $\mathbf{v}$ constant. Since $\mathbf{B}_{0}$ is spatially varying, $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is spatially varying when holding $\mathbf{v}$ constant. Therefore $\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$ and $\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$ are generally nonzero. The explicit expressions of these two derivatives are needed later in the derivation of the gyrokinetic equation and is discussed in Appendix F For notation ease, define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}=\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right] \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}=\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}, \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

then expression 28 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\right|_{\mathbf{v}}=\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] f_{g}-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.6 Velocity gradient operator in guiding-center coordinates

Next, consider the form of the velocity gradient $\partial f / \partial \mathbf{v}$ in terms of the guiding-center variables. Using the chain rule, $\partial f / \partial \mathbf{v}$ is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial \mathbf{v}}\right|_{\mathbf{x}}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the definition of $\mathbf{X}$, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \mathbf{v}} & =\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{v}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{v} \times \boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \\
& =\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial \mathbf{v}} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \\
& =\mathbf{I} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \tag{33}
\end{align*}
$$

From the definition of $\varepsilon$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial \mathbf{v}}=\mathbf{v} \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the definition of $\mu$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{v}}=\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the definition of $\alpha$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{v}}=\frac{1}{v_{\perp}}\left(\boldsymbol{e}_{\|} \times \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{v_{\perp}}\right)=\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{e}_{\alpha}$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{\alpha}=e_{\|} \times \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{v_{\perp}} \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the above results, expression (32) is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial \mathbf{v}}\right|_{\mathbf{x}}=\frac{\mathbf{I} \times \boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} . \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.7 Time derivatives in guiding-center coordinates

In terms of the guiding-center variables, the time partial derivative $\partial f_{p} / \partial t$ appearing in Vlasov equation is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}=\left.\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial t} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{V}}{\partial t} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{V}}, \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{V}=(\varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$. Here $\partial \mathbf{X} / \partial t$ and $\partial \mathbf{V} / \partial t$ are not necessarily zero because the equilibrium quantities involved in the definition of the guiding-center transformation are in general time dependent. This time dependence is assumed to be very slow in the gyrokinetic ordering discussed later. In the following, $\partial \mathbf{X} / \partial t$ and $\partial \mathbf{V} / \partial t$ will be dropped, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f_{p}}{\partial t} \approx \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t} \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.8 Final form of Vlasov equation in guiding-center coordinates

Using the above results, the Vlasov equation in guiding-center coordinates is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] f_{g}-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right] \\
+ & \frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{I} \times \boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
= & 0 \tag{41}
\end{align*}
$$

Using tensor identity $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{I} \times \mathbf{b}=\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$, equation 41 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] f_{g}-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right] \\
+ & \frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
+ & \frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
= & 0, \tag{42}
\end{align*}
$$

This is the Vlasov equation in guiding-center coordinates.

## 3 Perturbed Vlasov equation in guiding-center variables

### 3.1 Electromagnetic field perturbation

Since the definition of the guiding-center variables $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$ involves the macroscopic (equilibrium) fields $\mathbf{B}_{0}$ and $\mathbf{E}_{0}$, to further simplify Eq. (42), we need to separate electromagnetic field into equilibrium and perturbation parts. Writing the electromagnetic field as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{E}=\mathbf{E}_{0}+\delta \mathbf{E} \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{B}_{0}+\delta \mathbf{B} \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

then substituting these expressions into equation 42 and moving all terms involving the perturbed fields to the right-hand side, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] f_{g}-\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right] \\
+ & \frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{E}_{0}+\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}\right) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
+ & \frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
= & \delta R f_{g} \tag{45}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\delta R$ is defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta R= & -\frac{q}{m}(\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \cdot\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}\right) . \tag{46}
\end{align*}
$$

Next, let us simplify the left-hand side of Eq. 45). Note that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
& =\frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}\right) \cdot \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|} \times \mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{v_{\perp}^{2}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \\
& =-\Omega \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{47}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}=c\left(\frac{\mathbf{E}_{0} \times \boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}=\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E} 0} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \tag{48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E} 0}$ is defined by $\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E} 0}=c \mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / B_{0}$, which is the $\mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}$ drift. Further note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}}{c} \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} & =\left[\left(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \times \boldsymbol{e}_{\|}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \\
& =\left[v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}-\mathbf{v}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \tag{49}
\end{align*}
$$

which can be combined with $\mathbf{v} \cdot \partial f_{g} / \partial \mathbf{X}$ term, yielding $v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \partial f_{g} / \partial \mathbf{X}$.
Using Eqs. 48, 49, and 47), the left-hand side of equation 45 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{E} 0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] f_{g}-\Omega \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \\
+ & \frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \equiv L_{g} f_{g} \tag{50}
\end{align*}
$$

where $L_{g}$ is often called the unperturbed Vlasov propagator in guiding-center coordinates $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$.
[Equation 50, corresponds to Eq. (7) in Frieman-Chen's paper 3]. In Frieman-Chen's equation (7), there is a term

$$
\frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{E}-\mathbf{E}_{0}\right) \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial}{\partial \varepsilon}
$$

where $\mathbf{E}$ is the macroscopic electric field and is in general different from the $\mathbf{E}_{0}$ introduced when defining the guiding-center transformation. In my derivation $\mathbf{E}_{0}$ is chosen to be equal to the macroscopic electric field, and thus the above term is zero.]

Using the above results, Eq. 45) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} f_{g}=\delta R f_{g} \tag{51}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{E} 0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\Omega \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \\
& +\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right] \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}(\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m}(\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \cdot\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) . \tag{52}
\end{align*}
$$

It is instructive to consider some special cases of the above complicated equation. Consider the case that the equilibrium magnetic field $\mathbf{B}_{0}$ is uniform and time-independent, $\mathbf{E}_{0}=0$, and the electrostatic limit $\delta \mathbf{B}=0$, then equation (52) is simplified as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\Omega \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}(\delta \mathbf{E}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}  \tag{53}\\
& -\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right) \tag{54}
\end{align*}
$$

If neglecting the $\delta \mathbf{E}$ perturbation, the above equation reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\Omega \frac{\partial f_{g}}{\partial \alpha}=0 \tag{55}
\end{equation*}
$$

which agrees with Eq. (11) discussed in Sec. 1.2

### 3.2 Distribution function perturbation

Expand the distribution function $f_{g}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{g}=F_{g}+\delta F_{g} \tag{56}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F_{g}$ is assumed to be an equilibrium distribution function, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} F_{g}=0 \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Eqs. (56) and (57) in Eq. (51), we obtain an equation for $\delta F_{g}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} \delta F_{g}=\delta R F_{g}+\delta R \delta F_{g} \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.3 Gyrokinetic orderings

To facilitate the simplification of the Vlasov equation in the low-frequency regime, we assume the following orderings (some of which are roughly based on experiment measure of fluctuations responsible for tokamak plasma transport, some of which can be invalid in some interesting cases.) These ordering are often called the standard gyrokinetic orderings.

### 3.3.1 Assumptions for macroscopic quantities

Define the spatial scale length $L_{0}$ of equilibrium quantities by $L_{0} \approx F_{g} /\left|\nabla_{X} F_{g}\right|$. Assume that $L_{0}$ is much larger than the thermal gyro-radius $\rho_{i} \equiv v_{t} / \Omega$, i.e., $\lambda \equiv \rho_{i} / L_{0}$ is a small parameter, where $v_{t}=\sqrt{2 T / m}$ is the thermal velocity. That is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{F_{g}} \rho_{i}\left|\nabla_{X} F_{g}\right| \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \tag{59}
\end{equation*}
$$

The equilibrium (macroscopic) $\mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}$ flow, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E} 0}=\mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / B_{0}=-\nabla \Phi_{0} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / B_{0}, \tag{60}
\end{equation*}
$$

is assumed to be weak with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\left|\mathbf{v}_{E 0}\right|}{v_{t}} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \tag{61}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.3.2 Assumptions for microscopic quantities

We consider low frequency perturbations with $\omega / \Omega \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{\delta F_{g}} \frac{1}{\Omega} \frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial t} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \tag{62}
\end{equation*}
$$

We assume that the amplitudes of perturbations are small. Specifically, we assume

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\delta F_{g}}{F_{g}} \sim \frac{q \delta \Phi}{T} \sim \frac{|\delta \mathbf{B}|}{B_{0}} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right), \tag{63}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta \Phi$ is the perturbed scalar potential defined later in Eq. 68).
The perturbation is assumed to have a long wavelength (much longer than $\rho_{i}$ ) in the parallel direction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{\delta F_{g}}\left|\rho_{i} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta F_{g}\right| \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \tag{64}
\end{equation*}
$$

and have a short wavelength comparable to the thermal gyro-radius in the perpendicular direction

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{\delta F_{g}}\left|\rho_{i} \nabla_{X \perp} \delta F_{g}\right| \sim O\left(\lambda^{0}\right) \tag{65}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining Eq. (64) and (65), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{k_{\|}}{k_{\perp}} \approx \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X}}{\nabla_{X \perp}} \sim O(\lambda) \tag{66}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., the parallel wave number is one order smaller than the perpendicular wave-number.]

In terms of the scalar and vector potentials $\delta \Phi$ and $\delta \mathbf{A}$, the perturbed electromagnetic field is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{B}=\nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A} \tag{67}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{E}=-\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi-\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} \tag{68}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta \mathbf{E}_{\|} & =-\nabla_{\|} \delta \Phi-\left(\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right)_{\|}  \tag{69}\\
\delta \mathbf{E}_{\perp} & =-\nabla_{\perp} \delta \Phi-\left(\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right)_{\perp} \tag{70}
\end{align*}
$$

Using the above orderings, it is ready see that $\delta E_{\|}$is one order smaller than $\delta E_{\perp}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\delta E_{\|}}{\delta E_{\perp}}=O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \tag{71}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.4 Equation for macroscopic distribution function $F_{g}$

The evolution of the macroscopic quantity $F_{g}$ is governed by Eq. (57), i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} F_{g}=0, \tag{72}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the left-hand side is written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{g} F_{g} & =\frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial t}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial t} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{V}}{\partial t} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{V}} \\
& +\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{E} 0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\left(\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right) F_{g}\right]-\Omega \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \alpha} \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial F_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Expand $F_{g}$ as $F_{g}=F_{g 0}+F_{g 1}+\ldots$., where $F_{g i} \sim F_{g 0} O\left(\lambda^{i}\right)$. Then, the balance on order $O\left(\lambda^{0}\right)$ gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \alpha}=0 \tag{73}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., $F_{g 0}$ is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$. The balance on $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mu}\right)=\Omega \frac{\partial F_{g 1}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{74}
\end{equation*}
$$

Performing averaging over $\alpha, \int_{0}^{2 \pi}(\ldots) d \alpha$, on the above equation and noting that $F_{g 0}$ is independent of $\alpha$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mu} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right)=\int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \Omega \frac{\partial F_{g 1}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{75}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that a quantity $A=A(\mathbf{x})$ that is independent of $\mathbf{v}$ will depend on $\mathbf{v}$ when transformed to guiding-center coordinates, i.e., $A(\mathbf{x})=A_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v})$. Therefore $A_{g}$ depends on gyro-angle $\alpha$. However, since $\rho_{i} / L \ll 1$ for equilibrium quantities, the gyro-angle dependence of the equilibrium quantities can be neglected. Specifically, $\mathbf{e}_{\|}, B_{0}$ and $\Omega$ can be considered to be independent of
$\alpha$. As to $v_{\|}$, we have $v_{\|}= \pm \sqrt{2\left(\varepsilon-B_{0} \mu\right)}$. Since $B_{0}$ is considered independent of $\alpha$, so does $v_{\|}$. Using these results, equation 75 is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mu} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right)=0 \tag{76}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using $\mathbf{E}_{0}=-\nabla \Phi_{0}$, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mu} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left(\frac{-\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla \Phi_{0}}{B_{0}}\right)=0 \tag{77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \frac{1}{B_{0}} \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \Phi_{0} \approx 0 \tag{78}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the error is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right) \Phi_{0}$, and thus, accurate to $O(\lambda)$, the last term of equation 77 is zero. Then equation (77) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}=0 \tag{79}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies that $F_{g 0}$ is constant along a magnetic field line.

### 3.5 Equation for perturbed distribution function $\delta F_{g}$

Using $F_{g} \approx F_{g 0}$, equation 58 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} \delta F_{g}=\delta R F_{g 0}+\underbrace{\delta R \delta F_{g}}_{\text {Nonlinear Term } \sim O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)} \tag{80}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta R \delta F_{g}$ is a nonlinear term which is of order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ or higher, $L_{g} \delta F_{g}$ and $\delta R F_{g 0}$ are linear terms which are of order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ or higher. The linear term $\delta R F_{g 0}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta R F_{g 0}=\underbrace{-\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \mathbf{E}+\frac{\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}}{c}\right) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}}_{O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)}-\underbrace{\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mu}\right)}_{O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)}, \tag{81}
\end{equation*}
$$

In obtaining (81), use has been made of $\partial F_{g 0} / \partial \alpha=0$. Another linear term $L_{g} \delta F_{g}$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{g} \delta F_{g} & =\frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{E} 0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] \delta F_{g}-\underbrace{\Omega \frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial \alpha}}_{O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)} \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial \delta F_{g}}{\partial \alpha}\right), \tag{82}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\Omega \partial \delta F_{g} / \partial \alpha$ is of order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ and all the other terms are of order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$.
Next, to reduce the complexity of algebra, we consider the easier case in which $\partial F_{g 0} / \partial \mu=0$.

### 3.5.1 Balance on order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ : adiabatic response

The balance between the leading terms (terms of $O(\lambda)$ ) in Eq. 80) requires that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega \frac{\partial \delta F_{a}}{\partial \alpha}=\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \tag{83}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta F_{a}$ is a unknown distribution function to be solved from the above equation. It is ready to verify that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F_{a}=\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{84}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a solution to the above equation, accurate to $O(\lambda)$. [Proof: Substitute expression (84) into the left-hand side of Eq. 83), we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\Omega \frac{\partial \delta F_{a}}{\partial \alpha} & =\Omega \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}\left(\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \Omega \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}(\delta \Phi) \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \Omega\left(\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi\right) \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \alpha} \tag{85}
\end{align*}
$$

Using

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \alpha} & =\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}\left[-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right] \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}[-\mathbf{v}] \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} \\
& =-\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{\Omega} \tag{86}
\end{align*}
$$

Eq. 85) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\Omega \frac{\partial \delta F_{a}}{\partial \alpha} & =-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \Omega\left(\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi\right) \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{\Omega} \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left(\delta \mathbf{E}+\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right) \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\perp}  \tag{87}\\
& \approx \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}(\delta \mathbf{E}) \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\perp}, \tag{88}
\end{align*}
$$

where terms of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ have been dropped. Similarly, dropping the parallel electric field term (which is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ ) on the right-hand side of Eq. 83), we find it is identical to the right-hand side of Eq. 88]

### 3.5.2 Separate $\delta F_{g}$ into adiabatic and non-adiabatic part

As is discussed above, the terms of $O(\lambda)$ can be eliminated by splitting a so-called adiabatic term form $\delta F_{g}$. Specifically, write $\delta F_{g}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F_{g}=\delta F_{a}+\delta G \tag{89}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta F_{a}$ is given by (84), i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F_{a}=\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{90}
\end{equation*}
$$

which depends on the gyro-angle via $\delta \Phi$ and this term is often called adiabatic term. Plugging expression 89) into equation 80), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} \delta G=\underbrace{\delta R F_{g 0}-L_{g} \delta F_{a}}_{\text {LinearTerms }}+\underbrace{\delta R \delta F_{g}}_{\text {NonlinearTerms }} \tag{91}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, let us simplify the linear term on the right-hand side, i.e, $\delta R F_{g 0}-L_{g f} \delta F_{a}$, (which should be of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ or higher because $\Omega \partial \delta F_{a} / \partial \alpha$ cancels all the $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ terms in $\left.\delta R F_{g 0}\right)$.
$L_{g} \delta F_{a}$ is written

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{g} \delta F_{a} & =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} L_{g} \delta \Phi+\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi L_{g} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& \approx \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} L_{g} \delta \Phi \tag{92}
\end{align*}
$$

where the error is of order $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$. In obtaining the above expression, use has been made of $\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \partial F_{g 0} / \partial \mathbf{X}=0, \partial F_{g 0} / \partial \mathbf{X}=O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) F_{g 0}, \partial F_{g 0} / \partial \alpha=0, \partial F_{g 0} / \partial \mu=0$, and the definition of $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}$ given in expressions (29) and (30). The expression (92) involves $\delta \Phi$ operated by the Vlasov propagator $L_{g}$. Since $\delta \Phi$ takes the most simple form when expressed in particle coordinates (if in guiding-center coordinates, $\delta \Phi(\mathbf{x})=\delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega\right)$, which depends on velocity coordinates and thus more complicated), it is convenient to use the Vlasov propagator $L_{g}$ expressed in particle coordinates. Transforming $L_{g}$ back to the particle coordinates, expression (92) is written

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{g} \delta F_{a} & =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\left.\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \delta \Phi+\left.\frac{q}{m}\left(\mathbf{E}_{0}+\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial \mathbf{v}}\right|_{\mathbf{x}}\right] \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\left.\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \delta \Phi\right]  \tag{93}\\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\left.\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left(-\delta \mathbf{E}-\left.\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}\right)\right] \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\left.\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}-\left.\frac{\partial \mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right|_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}}\right]  \tag{94}\\
& =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}-\frac{\partial \mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right] \tag{95}
\end{align*}
$$

Using this and expression 81, $\delta R F_{g 0}-L_{g} \delta F_{a}$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta R F_{g 0}-L_{g} \delta F_{a} & =-\frac{q}{m}(\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial t}-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}-\frac{\partial \mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right] \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}(\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t}-\frac{\partial \mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right] \tag{96}
\end{align*}
$$

where the two terms of $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ (the terms in blue and red) cancel each other, with the remain terms being all of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, i.e, the contribution of the adiabatic term cancels the leading order terms of $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ on the RHS of Eq. 91.

The consequence of this is that, as we will see in Sec. 3.6.1. $\delta G$ is independent of the gyroangle, accurate to order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$. Therefore, separating $\delta F$ into adiabatic and non-adiabatic parts also corresponds to separating $\delta F$ into gyro-angle dependent and gyro-angle independent parts.

### 3.5.3 Linear term expressed in terms of $\delta \Phi$ and $\delta \mathbf{A}$

Let us rewrite the linear term (96) in terms of $\delta \Phi$ and $\delta \mathbf{A}$. The $\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}$ term in expression (96) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}=-\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi-\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v} \times \nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A} \tag{97}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that this term needs to be accurate to only $O(\lambda)$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B} \approx-\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi+\mathbf{v} \times \nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A}, \tag{98}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the error is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. Using the vector identity $\mathbf{v} \times \nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A}=(\nabla \delta \mathbf{A}) \cdot \mathbf{v}-(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \delta \mathbf{A}$ and noting $\mathbf{v}$ is constant for $\nabla_{x}$ operator, the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}=-\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi+\nabla_{x}(\delta \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v})-\left(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{x}\right) \delta \mathbf{A} \tag{99}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that Eq. 31) indicates that $\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi \approx \nabla_{X} \delta \Phi$, where the error is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, then the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}=-\nabla_{X} \delta \Phi+\nabla_{X}(\delta \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v})-\left(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{X}\right) \delta \mathbf{A} \tag{100}
\end{equation*}
$$

Further note that the parallel gradients in the above equation are of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ and thus can be dropped. Then expression 100 is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& \delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B} \\
& =-\nabla_{X \perp} \delta \Phi+\nabla_{X \perp}(\delta \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{v})-\left(\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X \perp}\right) \delta \mathbf{A} . \\
& =-\nabla_{X \perp} \delta L-\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X \perp} \delta \mathbf{A}, \tag{101}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\delta L$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta L=\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A} . \tag{102}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using expression 101, equation (96) is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta R F_{0}-L_{g} \delta F_{a}=-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(-\nabla_{X \perp} \delta L-\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X \perp} \delta \mathbf{A}\right) \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta L}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{103}
\end{equation*}
$$

where all terms are of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$.

### 3.6 Equation for the non-adiabatic part $\delta G$

Plugging expression (103) into Eq. 91, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{g} \delta G=-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(-\nabla_{X \perp} \delta L-\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X \perp} \delta \mathbf{A}\right) \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta L}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta R \delta F_{g} \tag{104}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L_{g}$ is given by Eq. 82, i.e.,

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{g} & =\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{E} 0}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right]-\Omega \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \mathbf{E}_{0} \cdot\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha}\right), \tag{105}
\end{align*}
$$

### 3.6.1 Expansion of $\delta G$

Expand $\delta G$ as

$$
\delta G=\delta G_{0}+\delta G_{1}+\ldots
$$

where $\delta G_{i} \sim O\left(\lambda^{i+1}\right) F_{g 0}$, and note that the right-hand side of Eq. 104 is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, then, the balance on order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$ requires

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \alpha}=0 \tag{106}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., $\delta G_{0}$ is gyro-phase independent.

The balance on order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ requires (for the special case of $\mathbf{E}_{0}=0$ ):

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] \delta G_{0} \\
= & -\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(-\nabla_{X \perp} \delta L-\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta \mathbf{A}\right) \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta L}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta R \delta F_{g} . \tag{107}
\end{align*}
$$

### 3.6.2 Gyro-averaging

Define the gyro-average operator $\langle\ldots\rangle_{\alpha}$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle h\rangle_{\alpha}=(2 \pi)^{-1} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} h d \alpha \tag{108}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $h=h(\mathbf{X}, \alpha, \varepsilon, \mu)$ is an arbitrary function of guiding-center variables. The gyro-averaging is an integration in the velocity space. [For a field quantity, which is independent of the velocity in particle coordinates, i.e., $h=h(\mathbf{x})$, it is ready to see that the above averaging is a spatial averaging over a gyro-ring.]

Gyro-averaging Eq. 107, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial t}+\left\langle v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}\right\rangle+\left\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}\left[-\nabla_{X \perp}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{109}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\left\langle\left(\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X}\right) \delta \mathbf{A}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \approx 0$, where the error is of order higher than $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. Note that $v_{\|}= \pm \sqrt{2\left(\varepsilon-B_{0} \mu\right)}$. Since $B_{0}$ is approximately independent of $\alpha$, so does $v_{\|}$. Using this, the first gyro-averaging on the left-hand side of the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\left\langle v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right\rangle \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}=v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \tag{110}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second gyro-averaging on the left-hand side of Eq. 109) can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta G_{0} \tag{111}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{V}_{D}$ is the magnetic curvature and gradient drift (Eq. 111) is derived in Appendix xx, to do later). Then Eq. (109) is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta G_{0}} \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}\left[-\nabla_{X \perp}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{112}
\end{align*}
$$

### 3.6.3 Simplification of the nonlinear term

Next, we try to simplify the nonlinear term $\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha}$ appearing in Eq. 112), which is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & =\left\langle\delta R\left(\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta G_{0}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\left\langle\frac{q}{m} \delta R\left(\delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha}+\left\langle\delta R \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{113}
\end{align*}
$$

First, let us focus on the first term, which can be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta R\left(\delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) & \approx-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left(\delta \mathbf{E}+\frac{\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}}{c}\right) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial \mathbf{X}}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left(\frac{\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}}{c}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial \alpha}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot\left(\mathbf{v} \frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\alpha}}{v_{\perp}} \frac{\partial \delta \Phi}{\partial \alpha}\right)+\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}} \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \mathbf{E}+\frac{\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}}{c}\right) \cdot \nabla_{v} \delta \Phi+\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}} \\
& =\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}} \tag{114}
\end{align*}
$$

Using the above results, the nonlinear term $\langle\delta R \delta F\rangle_{\alpha}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\delta R \delta F\rangle_{\alpha}=\frac{q}{m}\left\langle\delta \Phi \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}}\right\rangle_{\alpha}+\left\langle\delta R \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{115}
\end{equation*}
$$

Accurate to $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, the first term on the right-hand side of the above is zero. [Proof:

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\delta \Phi \delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v} \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & =\left\langle\frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}} \delta \Phi \nabla \delta \Phi \cdot \mathbf{v}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}}\left\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla(\delta \Phi)^{2}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{\partial^{2} F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon^{2}}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla(\delta \Phi)^{2}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx 0 \tag{116}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \approx 0$, where the error is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. Using the above results, expression (115) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\left\langle\delta R \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{117}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the expression of $\delta R$ given by Eq. 46), the above expression is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\delta R \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha}= & -\frac{q}{m}\left\langle\left(\delta \mathbf{E}+\frac{\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}}{c}\right) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\langle\delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}\rangle_{\alpha}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}\left\langle\delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{118}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\partial \delta G_{0} / \partial \alpha=0$. Using Eq. (101), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{q}{m}\left\langle(\delta \mathbf{E}+\mathbf{v} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) \times\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X \perp}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} . \tag{119}
\end{equation*}
$$

The other two terms in Eq. 118) can be proved to be zero. [Proof:

$$
\begin{align*}
-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\langle\delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{v}\rangle_{\alpha} & =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla_{x} \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{x} \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx 0 \tag{120}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}\left\langle\delta \mathbf{E} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & =\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}\left\langle\frac{1}{B_{0}} \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{x} \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}\left\langle\frac{1}{B_{0}} \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx 0 \tag{121}
\end{align*}
$$

] Using the above results, the nonlinear term is finally written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\delta R \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\frac{q}{m}\left[\nabla_{X \perp}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta G_{0} \tag{122}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this in Eq. 117), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\delta R \delta F_{g}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=\frac{q}{m}\left[\nabla_{X \perp}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right] \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta G_{0} \tag{123}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$.

### 3.6.4 Final equation for the non-adiabatic part of the perturbed distribution function

Using the above results, the gyro-averaged kinetic equation for $\delta G_{0}$ is finally written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial t}+(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\underbrace{\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{e_{\|}}{\Omega}}_{\text {nonlinear }}) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta G_{0} \\
& =\underbrace{\left(\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{e_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{g 0}}_{\text {spatial - drive }}-\underbrace{\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}}_{\text {velocit - space - damp }} \tag{124}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\mathbf{V}_{D}$ is the equilibrium guiding-center drift velocity, $\langle\ldots\rangle_{\alpha}$ is the gyro-phase averaging operator, $\delta L=\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}$, and $\delta G_{0}=\delta G_{0}(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, t)$ is gyro-angle independent and is related to the perturbed distribution function $\delta F_{g}$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F_{g}=\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta G_{0} \tag{125}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the first term is called "adiabatic term", which depends on the gyro-phase $\alpha$ via $\delta \Phi$. Equation (124) is the special case $\left(\partial F_{g 0} /\left.\partial \mu\right|_{\varepsilon}=0\right)$ of the Frieman-Chen nonlinear gyrokinetic equation given in Ref. [3]. Note that the nonlinear terms only appear on the left-hand side of Eq. (124) and all the terms on the right-hand side are linear. The term

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}, \tag{126}
\end{equation*}
$$

consists of the perturbed $E \times B$ drift and magnetic fluttering term (refer to Sec. D.3).

## 4 Characteristic curves of Frieman-Chen nonlinear gyrokinetic equation

The Frieman-Chen nonlinear gyrokinetic equation takes the following form:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta G_{0} \\
& =\left(\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{g 0}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}-\frac{q}{m} S_{l 2} \tag{127}
\end{align*}
$$

where $S_{l 2}$ is due to the $\mu$ dependence of $F_{g 0}$, which is not considered in this note. Dropping $S_{l 2}$ term, equation (127) agrees with Eq. (124) derived above.

Examining the left-hand side of Eq. 127], it is ready to find that the characteristic curves of this equation are given by the following equations:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t}=v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D} & -\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}  \tag{128}\\
\frac{d \varepsilon}{d t} & =0  \tag{129}\\
\frac{d \mu}{d t} & =0 \tag{130}
\end{align*}
$$

(It is instructive to notice that the kinetic energy $\varepsilon$ is conserved along the characteristic curves while the real kinetic energy of a particle is usually not conserved in a perturbed electromagnetic field. This may be an indication that Frieman-Chen equation neglects the velocity space nonlinearity.) For notation ease, we denote the perturbed drift by $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}=-\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}, \tag{131}
\end{equation*}
$$

(this drift can be written as expression (315), and the total guiding-center velocity by $\mathbf{V}_{G}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{V}_{G}=\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t}=v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \tag{132}
\end{equation*}
$$

The characteristic curve equations 128 - 130 , however, is not in the form that can be readily evolved numerically because there is no time evolution equation for $v_{\|}$, which appears explicitly in Eq. (128). It is ready to realize that the equation for $v_{\|}$is implicitly contained in the combination of the equations for $\varepsilon$ and $\mu$. Next, we derive the equation for $v_{\|}$.

### 4.1 Time evolution equation for $\mathbf{v}_{\|}$

Using the definition $\mu=v_{\perp}^{2} /\left(2 B_{0}\right)$, equation 130 , i.e., $d \mu / d t=0$, is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{v_{\perp}^{2}}{2 B_{0}}\right)=0 \tag{133}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{B} \frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\perp}^{2}\right)+v_{\perp}^{2} \frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}}\right)=0 \tag{134}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be further written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\perp}^{2}\right)=2 \mu \frac{d}{d t}\left(B_{0}\right) . \tag{135}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the definition of the characteristics, the right-hand side of the above equation can be expanded, giving

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\perp}^{2}\right)=2 \mu\left(\frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial t}+\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0}+\frac{d \varepsilon}{d t} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{d \mu}{d t} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mu}\right) \tag{136}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $d \mathbf{X} / d t, d \varepsilon / d t$, and $d \mu / d t$ are given by Eq. 128, 129, and 130), respectively. Using Eqs. 128-(130) and $\partial B_{0} / \partial t=0$, equation 136) is reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\perp}^{2}\right)=2 \mu\left(\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0}\right) \tag{137}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, equation 129, i.e., $d \varepsilon / d t=0$, is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v^{2}\right)=0 \tag{138}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be further written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\|}^{2}\right)=-\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\perp}^{2}\right) \tag{139}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Eq. 137, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\|}\right)=-\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}}\left(\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0}\right) \tag{140}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the equation for the time evolution of $v_{\|}$. This equation involves $d \mathbf{X} / d t$, i,e., the guiding-center drift, which is given by Eq. 128). Equation 140 for $v_{\|}$can be simplified by noting that the Frieman-Chen equation is correct only to the second order, $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, and thus the characteristics need to be correct only to the first order $O(\lambda)$ and higher order terms can be dropped. Note that, in the guiding-center drift $d \mathbf{X} / d t$ given by Eq. 128 , only the $v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}$term in is of order $O\left(\lambda^{0}\right)$, all the other terms are of $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$. Using this, accurate to order $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right)$, equation (140) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(v_{\|}\right)=-\mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0} \tag{141}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the time evolution equation ready to be used for numerically advancing $v_{\|}$. Note that only the mirror force $-\mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla B$ appears in Eq. (141) and there is no parallel acceleration term $q v_{\|} \delta E_{\|} / m$ in Eq. 141). This is because $\delta E_{\|}=-\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \delta \Phi-\partial \delta A_{\|} / \partial t$ is of order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ and $\left({ }^{* *}\right.$ check $^{* *}$ the terms involving $E_{\|}$are of $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$ or higher and thus have been dropped in deriving Frieman-Chen equation.)

## 5 Gyrokinetic equation in forms amenable to numerical computation

In the case of $F_{0}(\varepsilon, \mu, \alpha, \mathbf{X})$ being isotropic $\left(\partial F_{0} / \partial \mu=0\right.$ and $\partial F_{0} / \partial \alpha=0$ in guiding-center coordinates), Frieman-Chen's gyrokinetic equation 127 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta G_{0}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{142}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\delta G_{0}$ is the gyro-phase independent part of the perturbed distribution $\delta F$, and is related to $\delta F$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F=\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta G_{0} \tag{143}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the first term is called "the adiabatic term", which depends on gyro-phase $\alpha$ via $\delta \Phi$. In Eq. (142), $\delta L=\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}$.

### 5.1 Eliminate $\partial\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ term on the right-hand side of Eq. (142)

Note that the coefficient before $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ in Eq. (142) involves the time derivative of $\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}$, which is problematic if treated by using explicit finite difference in particle simulations (I test the algorithm that treats this term by implicit scheme, the result roughly agrees with the standard method discussed in Sec. 7). It turns out that $\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ can be eliminated by defining another gyro-phase independent function $\delta f$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta f=\frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta G_{0} \tag{144}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, in terms of $\delta f$, the perturbed distribution function $\delta F$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F=\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta f \tag{145}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Eq. 144 and Eq. 142, the equation for $\delta f$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta f} \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{146}
\end{align*}
$$

Noting that $\partial F_{0} / \partial t=0, \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla F_{0}=0, \nabla F_{0} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) F_{0}$, we find that the third line of the above equation is of order $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$ and thus can be dropped. Moving the second line to the right-hand side and noting that $\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}=\langle\delta \phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}$, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta f} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{147}
\end{align*}
$$

where two $\partial\langle\phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ terms cancel each other. Note that the right-hand side of Eq. (147) contains a nonlinear term $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$. This is different from the original Frieman-Chen equation, where all nonlinear terms appear on the left-hand side. [Equation 147) corresponds to Eq. (A8) in Yang Chen's paper [2] (where the first minus on the right-hand side is wrong and should be replaced with $q / m$; one $q$ is missing before $\partial(\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}) / \partial t$ in A9).]

The blue term in expression (145) gives "the polarization density" when integrated in the velocity space (discussed in Sec. 7). The reason for the name "polarization" is that ( $\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ ) is the difference between the local value and the averaged value on a gyro-ring, expressing a kind of "separation".

### 5.2 Eliminate $\partial\langle\delta \mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ term on the right-hand side of GK equation

Similar to the method of eliminating $\partial\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$, we define another gyro-phase independent function $\delta h$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta h=\delta f-\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{148}
\end{equation*}
$$

then Eq. 147) is written in terms of $\delta h$ as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h} \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& +\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\left[\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}, \tag{149}
\end{align*}
$$

Noting that $\partial F_{0} / \partial t=0, \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla F_{0}=0, \nabla F_{0} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) F_{0}$, we find that the third line of the above equation is of order $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$ and thus can be dropped. Moving the second line to the right-hand side and noting that $\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}=\langle\delta \phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}$, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}-\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right)\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}, \tag{150}
\end{align*}
$$

where two $\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ terms cancel each other and no time derivatives of the perturbed fields appear on the right-hand side. Noting that $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$ given by Eq. 131) is perpendicular to $\nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}-\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ and thus the blue term in Eq. 150) is zero, then Eq. 150) simplifies to

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}-\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{151}
\end{align*}
$$

Using $\mathbf{V}_{G}=v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$, equation 150 can also be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m}\left[\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}-\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{152}
\end{align*}
$$

5.2.1 For special case $\delta \mathbf{A} \approx \delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}$

Most gyrokinetic simulations approximate the vector potential as $\delta \mathbf{A} \approx \delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}$. Let us simplify Eq. (151) for this case. Then $\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \approx\left\langle v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{153}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in terms of $(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha, \sigma)$ coordinates, $v_{\|}$is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|}=\sigma \sqrt{2 \varepsilon-2 \mu B_{0}}, \tag{154}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $B_{0}(\mathbf{x})=B_{0}(\mathbf{X}+\boldsymbol{\rho})$ with $\boldsymbol{\rho}=\boldsymbol{\rho}(\mathbf{X}, \varepsilon, \mu, \alpha)$. Since the scale length of $B_{0}$ is much larger than the thermal Larmor radius, $B_{0}(\mathbf{x}) \approx B_{0}(\mathbf{X})$ and hence $v_{\|}$of thermal particles can be approximately considered to be independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$. Then $v_{\|}$can be taken out of the gyro-averaging in expression (153), yielding

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \approx v_{\|}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{155}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this, the term related to $\delta \mathbf{A}$ in 151 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} & =\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \\
& =\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\right)+v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right. \tag{1,56}
\end{align*}
$$

Using expression 154$),\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\right)$is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\right) & \approx\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\right) \\
& =\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\sigma \sqrt{2 \varepsilon-2 \mu B_{0}}\right) \\
& =\sigma\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\sqrt{2 \varepsilon-2 \mu B_{0}}\right) \\
& =\sigma v_{\|} \frac{-2 \mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0}}{2 \sqrt{2 \varepsilon-2 \mu B_{0}}} \\
& =v_{\|} \frac{-2 \mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0}}{2 v_{\|}} \\
& =-\mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} B_{0} . \tag{157}
\end{align*}
$$

(We can also obtain $\nabla_{X}\left(v_{\|}\right)=-\mu\left(\nabla B_{0}\right) / v_{\|}$by using Eq. 285). Using the above results, equation (151) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}-\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\left(\mu \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla B_{0}\right)\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}, \tag{158}
\end{align*}
$$

which agrees with the so-called $p_{\|}$formulation given in GEM code manual (the first line of Eq. 28), which uses $p_{\|}=v_{\|}+q\left\langle A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} / m$ as an independent variable.

In simulations, I use Eq. 158 and set $\delta A_{\|}$to zero to get the electrostatic version, rather than using Eq. 147) as the electrostatic version (the latter contains a nonlinear term on the right-hand side, which seems strange.)

### 5.3 Summary of split of the distribution function

In the above, the perturbed part of the distribution function, $\delta F$, is split at least three times in order to (1) simplify the gyrokinetic equation by splitting out the adiabatic response and (2)
eliminate the time derivatives, $\partial \delta \phi / \partial t$ and (3) $\partial \delta \mathbf{A} / \partial t$, on the right-hand. To avoid confusion, I summarize the split of the distribution function here. The total distribution function $F$ is split as

$$
\begin{equation*}
F=F_{0}+\delta F \tag{159}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F_{0}$ is the equilibrium distribution function and $\delta F$ is the perturbed part of the total distribution function. $\delta F$ is further split as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F=\delta h+\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}, \tag{160}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta h$ satisfies the gyrokinetic equation (151) or 158). In Eq. 160), the red term gives rise to the so-called polarization density (discussed in Sec. 7), which explicitly depends on $\delta \Phi$. This term is moved to the left-hand side of the Poisson equation and is utilized in solving the Poisson equation. The blue term also has an explicit dependence on $\delta \mathbf{A}$, which, however, will cause numerical problems in particle simulations if it is moved to the left-hand side of the Ampere equation, giving rise to the so-called "cancellation problem" in gyrokinetic simulations.

### 5.4 Velocity space moment of $\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}$

Consider the approximation $\delta \mathbf{A} \approx \delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}$, then the blue term in Eq. 160 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{m}\left\langle v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{161}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that $v_{\|}$can be taken out of the gyro-averaging. Then the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{m} v_{\|}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{162}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we neglect the FLR effect, then the above expression is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{q}{m} v_{\|} \delta A_{\|} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{163}
\end{equation*}
$$

The zeroth order moment (number density) is then written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta n=\frac{q}{m} \delta A_{\|} \int v_{\|} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \tag{164}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is zero if $F_{0}$ is Maxwellian. Next, consider the parallel current carried by distribution (163), which is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta j_{\|}=\frac{q^{2}}{m} \delta A_{\|} \int v_{\|}^{2} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \tag{165}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $F_{0}$ is a Maxwellian distribution given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{0}=n_{0}\left(\frac{m}{2 \pi T}\right)^{3 / 2} \exp \left(-\frac{m v^{2}}{2 T}\right) \tag{166}
\end{equation*}
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}=-\frac{m}{T} F_{0} \tag{167}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then expression 165 is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta j_{\|}=-\frac{q^{2}}{T} n_{0}\left(\frac{m}{2 \pi T}\right)^{3 / 2} \delta A_{\|} \int v_{\|}^{2} \exp \left(-\frac{m v^{2}}{2 T}\right) d \mathbf{v} \tag{168}
\end{equation*}
$$

Working in the spherical coordinates, then $v_{\|}=v \cos \theta$ and $d \mathbf{v}=v^{2} \sin \theta d v d \theta d \phi$. Then expression 168) is written

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta j_{\|} & =-\frac{q^{2}}{T} n_{0}\left(\frac{m}{2 \pi T}\right)^{3 / 2} \delta A_{\|} \int v^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta \exp \left(-\frac{m v^{2}}{2 T}\right) v^{2} \sin \theta d v d \theta d \phi \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{T} n_{0}\left(\frac{m}{2 \pi T}\right)^{3 / 2} \delta A_{\|} \frac{4 \pi}{3} \int v^{4} \exp \left(-\frac{m v^{2}}{2 T}\right) d v  \tag{169}\\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{T} n_{0}\left(\frac{1}{\pi}\right)^{3 / 2} \frac{2 T}{m} \delta A_{\|} \frac{4 \pi}{3} \int x^{4} \exp \left(-x^{2}\right) d x \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{T} n_{0}\left(\frac{1}{\pi}\right)^{3 / 2} \frac{2 T}{m} \delta A_{\|} \frac{4 \pi}{3} \frac{3 \sqrt{\pi}}{8} \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{m} n_{0} \delta A_{\|} \tag{170}
\end{align*}
$$

### 5.4.1 Parallel Ampere's Law

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}=\mu_{0}\left(\delta J_{\| i}^{(n+1)}+\delta J_{\| e}^{(n+1)}\right) \tag{171}
\end{equation*}
$$

The parallel currents are given by

$$
\begin{gather*}
\delta J_{\| i}^{(n+1)}=\delta J_{\| i}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)+\int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}  \tag{172}\\
\delta J_{\| e}=\delta J_{\| e}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)+\int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{e 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \tag{173}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $\delta J_{\| i}^{\prime}$ and $\delta J_{\| e}^{\prime}$ is the parallel current carried by the distribution function $\delta h$ in Eq. 160 , which are updated from the value at the $n$th time step to the $(n+1)$ th time step using an explicit scheme and therefore does not depends on the field at the $(n+1)$ th step. The blue terms in Eqs. 172 and (173) depend on the unknown field at the $(n+1)$ th step and thus need to be moved to the left-hand side of Ampere's law 171) if we want to solve this equation by direct methods. In this case, equation (171) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\mu_{0} \int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& -\mu_{0} \int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{e 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} . \\
& =\mu_{0}\left(\delta J_{\| i}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)+\delta J_{\| e}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)\right) \tag{174}
\end{align*}
$$

Then we need to put the blue terms into matrix form. If we put the bule terms into martrix form by using numerical spatial grid integration (as we do for the polarization density), then there arises the cancellation propblem (i.e., the two parts of the distribution are evaluated by different methods,one is grid-based and the other is MC marker based, there is risk that the sum of the two terms will be inaccurate when the two terms are of opposite signs and large amplitudes, and the final result amplitude is expected to be much smaller than the amplituded of the two terms). If we get the matrix form by evaluating it numerically using MC markers (which can avoid the cancellation problem), the corresponding matrix will depends on markers and thus needs to be re-constructed and inverted each time-step, which is computationally expensive.

Therefore we go back to Eq. (171) and try to solve it using iterative methods. However, it is found numerically that directly using Eq. (171) as an iterative scheme is usually divergent. To obtain a convergent iterative scheme, we need to have an approximate form for the blue terms, which is independent of markers and so that it is easy to construct its matrix, and then subtract this approximate form from both sides. After doing this, the iterative scheme has better chance to be convergent. An approximate form is that derived by neglecting the FLR effect given in Sec. 5.4. Using this, the iterative scheme for solving Eq. (171) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\mu_{0}\left(-\frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}} n_{i 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}} n_{e 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right) \\
& =\mu_{0}\left[\delta J_{\| i}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)+\delta J_{\| e}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)\right] \\
& +\mu_{0} \int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& +\mu_{0} \int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{e 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& -\mu_{0}\left(-\frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}} n_{i 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}} n_{e 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right) \tag{175}
\end{align*}
$$

In the drift-kinetic limit (i.e., neglecting the FLR effect), the blue and red terms on the right-hand side of the above equation cancel each other exactly. Even in this case, it is found numerically that these terms need to be retained and the blue terms are evaluated using markers. Otherwise, numerical inaccuracy can give numerical instabilities, which is the so-called cancellation problem. The explanation for this is as follows. The blue terms are part of the current. The remained part of the current carried by $\delta h$ is computed by using Monte-Carlo integration over markers. If the blue terms are evaluated analytically, rather than using Monte-Carlo integration over markers, then the cancellation between this analytical part and Monte-Carlo part can have large error (assume that there are two large contribution that have opposite signs in the two parts) because the two parts are evaluated using different methods and thus have different accuracy, which makes the cancellation less accurate.

The blue terms are sometimes called "adiabatic current". The red terms are approximation to the "adiabatic current" obtained by neglecting the FLR effect. Because the ion adiabatic current is less than the electron adiabatic current by a factor of $m_{e} / m_{i}$, its accuracy is not important, and is approximated by the drift-kinetic limit in GEM. And the cancellation error is not a problem and hence can be neglected. In this case, equation 175) is simplified as

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\mu_{0}\left(-\frac{q_{i}^{2}}{m_{i}} n_{i 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}-\frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}} n_{e 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right) \\
& =\mu_{0}\left[\delta J_{\| i}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)+\delta J_{\| e}^{\prime}\left(\delta \phi^{(n)}, \delta A_{\|}^{(n)}\right)\right] \\
& +\mu_{0} \int\left(v_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right)^{2} \frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}}\left\langle\delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{e 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& -\mu_{0}\left(-\frac{q_{e}^{2}}{m_{e}} n_{e 0} \delta A_{\|}^{(n+1)}\right) \tag{176}
\end{align*}
$$

### 5.5 Split-weight scheme for electrons

The perturbed distribution function is decomposed as given by Eq. 160, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F=\delta h+\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{177}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the term in blue is the so-called adiabatic response, which depends on the gyro-angle. Recall that the red term $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$, which is independent of the gyro-angle, is introduced in order to eliminate the time derivative $\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ term on the right-hand side of the original Frieman-Chen gyrokinetic equation.

The so-called generalized split-weight scheme corresponds to going back to the original Frieman-Chen gyrokinetic equation by introducing another $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ term with a free small parameter $\epsilon_{g}$. Specifically, $\delta h$ in the above is split as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta h=\delta h_{s}+\epsilon_{g} \frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{178}
\end{equation*}
$$

(If $\varepsilon_{g}=1$, then the two $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ terms in Eq. 177) and 178) cancel each other.) Substituting this expression into Eq. 152 , we obtain the following equation for $\delta h_{s}$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h_{s}} \\
& +\epsilon_{g} \frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& +\epsilon_{g} \frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}-\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right)\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{179}
\end{align*}
$$

Noting that $\partial F_{0} / \partial t=0, \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla F_{0}=0, \nabla F_{0} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) F_{0}$, we find that the third line of the above equation is of order $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$ and thus can be dropped. Moving the second line to the right-hand side, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h_{s}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left\{\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left[\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right]+\epsilon_{g}\left[\frac{\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right]\right\}\left(\frac{\partial F_{\beta}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

### 5.5.1 special case of $\epsilon_{g}=1$

For the special case of $\epsilon_{g}=1$ (the default and most used case in GEM code, Yang Chen said $\epsilon_{g}<1$ cases are sometimes not accurate, so he gave up using it since 2009), equation 180 can be simplified as:

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h_{s}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}+\frac{\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{181}
\end{align*}
$$

where two $\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ terms cancel each other. Because the $v_{\|} E_{\|}$term is one of the factors that make kinetic electron simulations difficult, eliminating $\mathbf{V}_{G} \cdot\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ term may be beneficial for obtaining stable algorithms.

For $\epsilon_{g}=1, \delta F$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta F & =\delta h_{s}+\varepsilon_{g} \frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =\delta h_{s}+\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{182}
\end{align*}
$$

where the adiabatic term will be moved to the left-hand side of the Poisson's equation. The descretization of this term is much easier than the polarization density. This term is already in GEM.

Equation (181) actually goes back to the original Frieman-Chen equation. The only difference is that $\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \overline{\mathbf{A}}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}$ is further split from the perturbed distribution function. Considering this, equation (181) can also be obtained from the original Frieman-Chen equation (142) by writing $\delta G_{0}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta G_{0}=\delta h_{s}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{183}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case, $\delta F$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F=\delta h_{s}+\frac{q}{m} \delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{g 0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{184}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting expression (183) into equation (142), we obtain the following equation for $\delta h_{s}$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h_{s}} \\
& +\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& +\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{185}
\end{align*}
$$

Noting that $\partial F_{0} / \partial t=0, \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla F_{0}=0, \nabla F_{0} \sim O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) F_{0}$, we find that the third line of the above equation is of order $O\left(\lambda^{3}\right)$ and thus can be dropped. Moving the second line to the right-hand side, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta h_{s}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\frac{\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right]\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}, \tag{186}
\end{align*}
$$

which agrees with Eq. 181).
In GEM, the split weight method is used only for electrons and the $\partial\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} / \partial t$ is approximated by $\partial \delta \Phi / \partial t$ and this term is obtained from the vorticity equation (rather than from an implicit iteration).

### 5.6 Comments on how to split the distribution function

In particle simulations, the seemingly trivial thing on how to split the distribution function is often considered to be a big deal. Separating the perturbed part from the equilibrium part is
considered to be a big deal and got the famous name " $\delta f$ particle method", in contrast to the conventional particle method which is now called full-f particle method. Summarizing the above result, the total distribution function $F$ is split in the following form:

$$
\begin{align*}
F & =F_{0}+\delta F \\
& =F_{0}+\delta h+\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \tag{187}
\end{align*}
$$

and only $\delta h$ is actually evolved by using markers and its moment in the phase-space is evaluated via Monte-Carlo integration. The blue and red terms in the above expression explicitly depends on the perturbed field. The velocity integrations of these two terms can be performed analytically. However, in some cases, the phase space integration of the blue terms must be evaluated using markers, i.e., using Monte-Carlo method, to avoid the inaccurate cancellation between the integration of these parts and the integration of $\delta h$ (the latter is computed using Monte-Carlo method). When will the inaccurate cancellation is significant depends on the problem being investigated and thus can only be determined by actual numerical experiments. Many electromagnetic particle simulation experiments indicate that the parallel current carried by the blue term must be evaluated via Monte-Carlo method, otherwise inaccurate cancellation between this term and $\delta h$ will give rise to numerical instabilities.

## 6 Coordinate system and grid in TEK code

In the magnetic coordinates $(\psi, \theta, \phi)$ used in TEK code, $\psi$ is the normalized poloidal magnetic flux, which is increasing from the magnetic axis to the plasma boundary, $\theta$ is increasing along the anti-clockwise direction when viewed along $\nabla \phi$ direction, $\phi$ is the toroidal angle of the right-handed cylindrical coordinates $(R, \phi, Z)$. In this convention the Jacobian of the $(\psi, \theta, \phi)$ coordinate system, $\mathcal{J}=(\nabla \psi \cdot \nabla \theta \times \nabla \phi)$ is negative, i.e., $(\psi, \theta, \phi)$ is a left-handed system. The field-line-following coordinate system $(\psi, \theta, \alpha)$ is also a left-handed system. The coordinate system $(x=\psi, y=\alpha, z=\theta)$ is a right-handed system.


Figure 1: Poloidal grid for equilibrium quantities used in my code and GEM code. My array index starts from 1 whereas GEM array index starts from 0 . Hence mpol=nth+1. nth is denoted by ntheta in GEM. The array starts at $\theta=-\pi$ and ends at $\theta=+\pi(\theta= \pm \pi$ is chosen to be at the high-field side in both the codes) I do not need to make connection with GEM's equilibrium poloidal array because there is no coupling of equilibrium quantities between the code written by me and the original code in GEM. The coupling happens for the perturbed quanties, whose poloidal grids need to be consistent. Poloidal grid-points for perturbation are indexed as 0:mpol2 with the index 0 corresponding to $\theta=-\pi$ and the index mpol2 corresponding to $\theta=+\pi$. Field equation is solved at $0: \mathrm{mpol} 2-1$, and the field at mpol2, i.e., $\theta=+\pi$, is obtained by inerpolating the field at $\theta=-\pi$. mpol2 is determined by mpol $2=$ numproc/ntube. mpol and mpol2 must be chosen in a way that makes (mpol-1)/mpol2 be an integer.


Figure 2: Radial grid used in my code. Two radial arrays are used in the code, radcor_1d_array (1:nt) and radcor_1d_array2 $(1: n)$, respctively corresponding to the nt points and $n$ points indicated in the figure. Here nt $=n+2 m$ and $m$ is the number of grid points in one of the two buffer regions (regions in blue color). The index of the two arrays both begin at 1 (rather than 0 ). In the code $n$ is denoted by nflux 2 and $n t$ is denoted by nflux, $m$ is denoted by points_in_buffer. In GEM the radial array does no include the buffer regions and the index starts at 0 and ends at $i m x$. Hence $n=i m x+1$.


Figure 3: Toroidal grid used in my code and GEM code. My array index starts at 1 whereas GEM array index starts from 0 . The last grid is at $\phi=2 \pi / \mathrm{nseq}$ and is indexed as mtor +1 in my grid system. The last grid point for density and potential arrays in my code is at mtor rather than mtor +1 . GEM array ends at $j m$. It follows that mtor=jm.

My array index system is bad and GEM array index system is good because my system is not consistent: sometimes I use 0-based index and sometimes I use 1-based index, sometimes the index ends at n and sometimes ends at $\mathrm{n}+1$. It is important to know accurately the transformation between the two systems.

## 7 Poisson's equation and polarization density

Poisson's equation is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla^{2} \delta \Phi=q_{i} \delta n_{i}+q_{e} \delta n_{e} \tag{188}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla^{2} \delta \Phi$ is called the space-charge term. Since we consider modes with $k_{\|} \ll k_{\perp}$, the space-charge term is approximated as $\nabla^{2} \delta \Phi \equiv \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi+\nabla_{\|}^{2} \delta \Phi \approx \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi$. Then Eq. (188) is
written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi=q_{i} \delta n_{i}+q_{e} \delta n_{e} \tag{189}
\end{equation*}
$$

This approximation eliminates the parallel plasma oscillation from the system. The perpendicular plasma oscillations seem to be only partially eliminated in the system consisting of gyrokinetic ions and drift-kinetic electrons. There are the so-called $\Omega_{H}$ modes (also called electrostatic shear Alfven wave) that appear in the gyrokinetic system which have some similarity with the plasma oscillations but with a much smaller frequency, $\Omega_{H} \sim\left(k_{\|} / k_{\perp}\right)\left(\lambda_{D} / \rho_{s}\right) \omega_{p e}$.

Using expression 160), the perturbed number density $\delta n$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta n & =\int \delta F d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int \delta h d \mathbf{v}+\int\left[\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right] d \mathbf{v}+\int\left[\frac{q}{m}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right] d \mathbf{v} \tag{190}
\end{align*}
$$

where the blue term is approximately zero for isotropic $F_{0}$ and this term is usually dropped in simulations that assume isotropic $F_{0}$ and approximate $\delta \mathbf{A}$ as $\delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}$. The red term in expression 190 is the so-called the polarization density $n_{p}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta n_{p}(\mathbf{x})=\int \frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \tag{191}
\end{equation*}
$$

which has an explicit dependence on $\delta \Phi$ and is usually moved to the left hand of Poisson's equation when constructing the numerical solver of the Poisson equation, i.e., equation (189) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi-q_{i} \int \frac{q_{i}}{m_{i}}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}=q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta n_{e} \tag{192}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta n_{i}^{\prime}=\delta n_{i}-\delta n_{p i}=\int \delta h_{i} d \mathbf{v}$, which is evaluated by using Monte-Carlo markers. Since some parts depending on $\delta \Phi$ are moved from the right-hand side to the left-hand side of the field equation, numerical solvers (for $\delta \Phi$ ) based on the left-hand side of Eq. 192) probably behaves better than the one that is based on the left-hand side of Eq. 189, i.e., $-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi$.

### 7.1 Discussion on cancellation scheme

The polarization density is part of the perturbed density that is extracted from the source term and moved to the left-hand side of the Poisson equation. The polarization density will be evaluated without using Monte-Carlo markers, whereas the remained density on the right-hand side will be evaluated using Mote-Carlo markers. The two different methods of evaluating two parts of the total perturbed density can possibly introduce significant errors if the two terms are expected to cancel each other and give a small quantity that is much smaller than either of the two terms. This is one pitfall for PIC simulations that extract some parts from the source term and move them to the left-hand side. To remedy this, rather than directly moving a part of the distribution function to the left-hand side, we subtract an (approximate) analytic expression from both sides of Eq. 189). The analytical expressions on both sides are evaluated based on grid values of perturbed electromagnetic fields and are independent of makers. All the original parts of the distribution functions are kept on the right-hand side and are still evaluated by using markers, which hopefully avoids the possible cancellation problem. This strategy is often called a cancellation scheme. Since unknown perturbed electromagnetic fields appear on the right-hand side, iteration is needed to solve the field equation.

Note that two things appear here: What motivates us to move parts of the distribution function to the left? It is the goal of hopefully making the left-hand side matrix more wellbehaved (such as good condition number, etc.) Why do we need the cancellation scheme?

Because we want to avoid the numerical inaccuracy that appears when large terms cancels each other. Note that iteration is needed when the cancellation scheme is used because the right-hand side explicitly contains unknown electromagnetic fields.

It turns out that the cancellation scheme is not necessary for Eq. 192, but for the field solver for Ampere's equation (discussed later), this cancellation scheme is necessary in order to obtain stable results.

### 7.2 Adiabatic electron response ** need to check the derivation

Assume that the total electron density satisfies the Boltzmann distribution in the presence of the perturbed potential, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{e}=N_{e} \exp \left(-\frac{q_{e} \delta \Phi}{T_{e}}\right) \approx N_{e}\left(1-\frac{q_{e} \delta \Phi}{T_{e}}\right) \tag{193}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N_{e}$ is a radial function. Note that this does not that imply the equilibrium density is $N_{e}$ (it just implies that the total density is $N_{e}$ at the location where $\delta \Phi=0$, which can still be different from the equilibrium density).

Further assume that the magnetic surface average of $\delta n_{e}=n_{e}-n_{e 0}$ is zero, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle n_{e}-n_{e 0}\right\rangle=0 \tag{194}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $n_{e 0}$ is the equilibrium electron density. Using Eq. (193) in the above condition, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{e}=n_{e 0} \frac{1}{1-\frac{q_{e}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle}{T_{e}}} \approx n_{e 0}\left(1+\frac{q_{e}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle}{T_{e}}\right) \tag{195}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $n_{e}$ in expression 193 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{e}=n_{e 0}\left(1+\frac{q_{e}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle}{T_{e}}\right)\left(1-\frac{q_{e} \delta \Phi}{T_{e}}\right) \approx n_{e 0}\left(1+\frac{q_{e}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle}{T_{e}}-\frac{q_{e} \delta \Phi}{T_{e}}\right) \tag{196}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\delta n_{e}=n_{e}-n_{e 0}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta n_{e}=-n_{0 e} \frac{q_{e}(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle)}{T_{e}} \tag{197}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 7.3 Poisson's equation with adiabatic electron response

Pluging expression (197) into the Poisson equation 192, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi-q_{i} \int \frac{q_{i}}{m_{i}}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}+n_{0 e} \frac{q_{e}^{2}(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle)}{T_{e}}=q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime} \tag{198}
\end{equation*}
$$

When solving the Poisson equation, the equation is Fourier expanded in toroidal harmonics and each harmonic is independent of each other, so that they can be solved independently. For $n \neq 0$ harmonics, the $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle$ terms is zero and thus it is trivial to treat the electron term. Only for the $n=0$ harmonic, the $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle$ term is nonzero and needs special treatment. I use the following method to obtain $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle$. First slove the $n=0$ harmonic of the following equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi^{\prime}-q_{i} \int \frac{q_{i}}{m_{i}}\left(\delta \Phi^{\prime}-\left\langle\delta \Phi^{\prime}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}=q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime} \tag{199}
\end{equation*}
$$

(i.e., Eq. 198) with electron term dropped), and then take the magnetic surface average of the solution $\delta \Phi^{\prime}$ to get $\left\langle\delta \Phi^{\prime}\right\rangle$. It can be proved that $\left\langle\delta \Phi^{\prime}\right\rangle$ is equal to $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle$. Then solving Eq. 198) becomes easier since $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle$ term can be moved to the right-hand side and be treated as a known source term.

## 8 Polarization density with the velocity integration performed

Since $\delta \Phi$ is independent of the velocity in the particle coaordinates, the first term (adiabatic term) in expression $(\overline{191})$ is trivial and the velocity integration can be readily performed (assume $F_{0}$ is Maxwellian), giving

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta n_{\mathrm{ad}} & =\int \frac{q}{m}(\delta \Phi) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\frac{q}{m}(\delta \Phi) \int\left(-\frac{m}{T} f_{M}\right) d \mathbf{v} \\
& =-\frac{q \delta \Phi}{T} n_{0} \tag{200}
\end{align*}
$$

which is called adiabatic response. Next, let us perform the gyro-averaging and the velocity integration of the second term in expression 191), i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\int \frac{q}{m}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \tag{201}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 8.1 Gyro-averaging of $\delta \Phi$ in guiding-center coordinates

In order to perform the gyro-averaging of $\delta \Phi$, we Fourier expand $\delta \Phi$ in space as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \Phi(\mathbf{x})=\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{202}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then express $\mathbf{x}$ in terms of the guiding center variables $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v})$ since the gyro-averaging is taken by holding $\mathbf{X}$ rather than $\mathbf{x}$ constant. The guiding-center transformation gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{X}+\rho(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \approx \mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} \tag{203}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using expressions 202 and 203, the gyro-average of $\delta \Phi$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} & =\left\langle\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\left\langle\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp \left(i \mathbf{k} \cdot\left(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right)\right) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{X})\left\langle\exp \left(-i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} . \tag{204}
\end{align*}
$$

When doing the gyro-averaging, $\mathbf{X}$ is hold constant and thus $\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})$ is also constant. Then it is straightforward to define the gyro-angle $\alpha$. Let $\mathbf{k}_{\perp}$ define one of the perpendicular direction $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1}$, i.e., $\mathbf{k}_{\perp}=k_{\perp} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1}$. Then another perpendicular basis vector is defined by $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{2}=\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1}$. Then $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is written as $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}=v_{\perp}\left(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1} \cos \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{2} \sin \alpha\right)$, which defines the gyro-angle $\alpha$. Then the blue expression in Eq. (204) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
-i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} & =-i \mathbf{k} \cdot v_{\perp}\left(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1} \cos \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{2} \sin \alpha\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} \\
& =-i \mathbf{k} \cdot \frac{v_{\perp}}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\left(-\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{2} \cos \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{1} \sin \alpha\right) \\
& =-i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha \tag{205}
\end{align*}
$$

Then the gyro-averaging in expression 204 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\exp \left(-i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} & =\left\langle\exp \left(-i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \exp \left(-i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha\right) d \alpha \\
& =J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \tag{206}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of the definition of the zeroth Bessel function of the first kind. Then $\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}$ in expression 204 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}=\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{X}) J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{207}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 8.2 Gryo-angle integration in particle coordinates

Next, we need to perform the integration in velocity space, which is done by holding $\mathbf{x}$ (rather than $\mathbf{X}$ ) constant. Therefore, it is convenient to transform back to particle coordinates. Using $\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}$, expression 207 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}=\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \exp \left(i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{208}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the velocity integration is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x})\left[\int J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \exp \left(i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}\right] \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{209}
\end{align*}
$$

Similar to Eq. 205, except for now at $\mathbf{x}$ rather than $\mathbf{X}, i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}=i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha \tag{210}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since this is at $\mathbf{x}$ rather than $\mathbf{X}, k_{\perp}, v_{\perp}$, and $\Omega$ are different from those appearing in expression 205. However, since this difference is due to the variation of the equilibrium quantity $\mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega$ in a Larmor radius, and thus is small and is ignored in the following.

Plugging expression (210) into expression 209) and using $d \mathbf{v}=v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} d \alpha$, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x})\left[\int J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \exp \left(i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} d \alpha\right] \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$ in terms of guiding-center variables. When transformed back to particle coordinates, $\mathbf{X}$ contained in $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ will introduce $\alpha$ dependence via $\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}$. This dependence on $\alpha$ is weak since the equilibrium quantities can be considered constant over a Larmor radius distance evaluated at the thermal velocity. Therefore
this dependence can be ignored when performing the integration over $\alpha$, i.e., in terms of particle coordinates, $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ is approximately independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$. Then the integration over $\alpha$ in Eq. 211 can be performed, yielding

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v} \\
= & \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \iint J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right)\left[\int_{0}^{2 \pi} \exp \left(i \frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega} \sin \alpha\right) d \alpha\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \\
= & \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x})\left[\iint J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) 2 \pi J_{0}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|}\right] \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}}, \tag{212}
\end{align*}
$$

where again use has been made of the definition of the Bessel function.

### 8.2.1 The remaining velocity integration can be performed analytically if $F_{0}$ is Maxwellian

In order to perform the remaining velocity integration in expression 212, we assume that $F_{0}$ is a Maxwellian distribution given by

$$
\begin{align*}
F_{0} & =f_{M}=\frac{n_{0}(\mathbf{X})}{(2 \pi T(\mathbf{X}) / m)^{3 / 2}} \exp \left(\frac{-m v^{2}}{2 T(\mathbf{X})}\right)  \tag{213}\\
& =\frac{n_{0}}{(2 \pi)^{3 / 2} v_{t}^{3}} \exp \left(\frac{-v^{2}}{2 v_{t}^{2}}\right), \tag{214}
\end{align*}
$$

where $v_{t}=\sqrt{T / m}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}=-\frac{m}{T} f_{M} \tag{215}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again we will ignore the weak dependence of $n_{0}(\mathbf{X})$ and $T(\mathbf{X})$ on $\mathbf{v}$ introduced by $\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{x}+$ $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega$ when transformed back to particle coordinates. (For sufficiently large velocity, the corresponding Larmor radius will be large enough to make the equilibrium undergo substantial variation. Since the velocity integration limit is to infinite, this will definitely occur. However, $F_{0}$ is exponentially decreasing with velocity, making those particles with velocity much larger than the thermal velocity negligibly few and thus can be neglected.)

Parallel integration Using Eq. 215, the expression in the square brackets of Eq. 212 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& 2 \pi \iint J_{0}^{2}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} \\
& =-\frac{m}{T} \frac{n_{0}}{(2 \pi)^{1 / 2}} \iint J_{0}^{2}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \frac{1}{v_{t}^{3}} \exp \left(-\frac{v_{\|}^{2}+v_{\perp}^{2}}{2 v_{t}^{2}}\right) v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|}  \tag{216}\\
& =-\frac{m}{T} \frac{n_{0}}{(2 \pi)^{1 / 2}} \iint J_{0}^{2}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \exp \left(-\frac{\bar{v}_{\|}^{2}+\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \bar{v}_{\perp} d \bar{v}_{\perp} d \bar{v}_{\|}, \tag{217}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{v}_{\|}=v_{\|} / v_{t}, \bar{v}_{\perp}=v_{\perp} / v_{t}$. Using

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp \left(-\frac{x^{2}}{2}\right) d x=\sqrt{2 \pi} \tag{218}
\end{equation*}
$$

the integration over $\bar{v}_{\|}$in expression 217 can be performed, yielding

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{m}{T} n_{0} \int_{0}^{\infty} J_{0}^{2}\left(\frac{k_{\perp} v_{\perp}}{\Omega}\right) \exp \left(-\frac{\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \bar{v}_{\perp} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \tag{219}
\end{equation*}
$$

Perpendicular integration Using (I verified this by using Sympy)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{\infty} J_{0}^{2}(a x) \exp \left(-\frac{x^{2}}{2}\right) x d x=\exp \left(-a^{2}\right) I_{0}\left(a^{2}\right) \tag{220}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $I_{0}(a)$ is the zeroth modified Bessel function of the first kind, expression 219 is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{m}{T} n_{0} \exp (-b) I_{0}(b) \tag{221}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $b=k_{\perp}^{2} v_{t}^{2} / \Omega^{2}=k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{t}^{2}$. Then the corresponding density 201) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{q}{m} \int\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}=\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \exp (-b) I_{0}(b) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{222}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 8.2.2 Final form of polarization density

In Fourier space, the adiabatic term in expression 200 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int \frac{q}{m}(\delta \Phi) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} d \mathbf{v}=-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \delta \Phi=-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{223}
\end{equation*}
$$

Plugging expression 222 and 223 into expression 191, the polarization density $n_{p}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{p}=-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x})\left[1-\exp (-b) I_{0}(b)\right] \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{224}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{0}=\exp (-b) I_{0}(b) \tag{225}
\end{equation*}
$$

then Eq. (224) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{p}=-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x})\left[1-\Gamma_{0}\right] \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{226}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expression 226) agrees with the result given in Yang Chen's notes. Note that the dependence on species mass enters the formula through the Larmor radius $\rho_{t}$ in $\Gamma_{0}$.

### 8.3 Pade approximation

$\Gamma_{0}$ defined in Eq. 225 can be approximated by the Pade approximation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{0} \approx \frac{1}{1+b} \tag{227}
\end{equation*}
$$

The comparison between the exact value of $\Gamma_{0}$ and the above Pade approximation is shown in Fig. 4.


Figure 4: Comparison between the exact value of $\Gamma_{0}=\exp \left(-\left(k_{\perp} \rho\right)^{2}\right) I_{0}\left(\left(k_{\perp} \rho\right)^{2}\right)$ and the corresponding Pade approximation $1 /\left(1+\left(k_{\perp} \rho\right)^{2}\right)$.

Using the Pade approximation (227), the polarization density $n_{p}$ in expression (226) can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{p} \approx-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) \frac{k_{\perp}^{2} \rho^{2}}{1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho^{2}} \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \tag{228}
\end{equation*}
$$

(Pade approximate is the "best" approximation of a function by a rational function of given order - under this technique, the approximant's power series agrees with the power series of the function it is approximating.)

### 8.3.1 Long wavelength approximation of the polarization density

In the long wavelength limit, $k_{\perp} \rho \ll 1$, expression can be further approximated as

$$
\begin{align*}
n_{p} & \approx-\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \int \delta \Phi_{k} \exp (i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}) k_{\perp}^{2} \rho^{2} \frac{d \mathbf{k}}{(2 \pi)^{3}} \\
& =\frac{q n_{0}}{T} \rho^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi \tag{229}
\end{align*}
$$

Then the corresponding term in the Poisson equation is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{q}{\varepsilon_{0}} n_{p} & =\frac{q^{2} n_{0}}{\varepsilon_{0} T} \rho^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi \\
& =\frac{\rho^{2}}{\lambda_{D}^{2}} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi \tag{230}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\lambda_{D}$ is the Debye length defined by $\lambda_{D}^{2}=T \varepsilon_{0} /\left(n_{0} q^{2}\right)$. For typical tokamak plasmas, the thermal ion gyroradius $\rho_{i}$ is much larger than $\lambda_{D}$. Therefore the term in expression 230 for ions is much larger than the space charge term $\nabla^{2} \delta \Phi \equiv \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi+\nabla_{\|}^{2} \delta \Phi \approx \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi$ in the Poisson equation. Therefore the space charge term can be neglected in the long wavelength limit.

Equation (230) also shows that electron polarization density is smaller than the ion polarization density by a factor of $\rho_{e} / \rho_{i} \approx 1 / 60$. Note that this conclusion is drawn in the long wavelength limit. For short wavelength, the electron polarization and ion polarization density can be of similar magnitude (to be discussed later).

### 8.3.2 Polarization density expressed in terms of Laplacian operator

The polarization density expression 229 is for the long wavelength limit, which partially neglects FLR effect. Let us go back to the more general expression 228. The Poisson equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi=q_{i} \delta n_{i}+q_{e} \delta n_{e} \tag{231}
\end{equation*}
$$

Write $\delta n_{i}=n_{p i}+\delta n_{i}^{\prime}$, where $\delta n_{p i}$ is the ion polarization density, then the above expression is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi-q_{i} n_{p i}=q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta n_{e} \tag{232}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fourier transforming in space, the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} k_{\perp}^{2} \delta \hat{\Phi}-q_{i} \hat{n}_{p i}=q_{i} \delta \hat{n}_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta \hat{n}_{e}, \tag{233}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{n}_{p i}$ is the Fourier transformation (in space) of the polarization density $n_{p i}$ and similar meanings for $\delta \hat{\Phi}, \delta \hat{n}_{i}^{\prime}$, and $\delta \hat{n}_{e}$. Expression 228 implies that $\hat{n}_{p i}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{n}_{p i}=-\frac{q_{i} n_{i 0}}{T_{i}} \delta \hat{\Phi} \frac{k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}}{1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}} . \tag{234}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this, equation 233 is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\varepsilon_{0} k_{\perp}^{2} \delta \hat{\Phi}-q_{i}\left(-\frac{q_{i} n_{i 0}}{T_{i}} \frac{k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}}{1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}} \delta \hat{\Phi}\right)=q_{i} \delta \hat{n}_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta \hat{n}_{e} \tag{235}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiplying both sides by $\left(1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}\right) / \varepsilon_{0}$, the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\left(1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}\right) k_{\perp}^{2} \delta \hat{\Phi}-\frac{q_{i}}{\varepsilon_{0}}\left(-\frac{q_{i} n_{i 0}}{T_{i}}\left(k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}\right) \delta \hat{\Phi}\right)=\frac{1}{\varepsilon_{0}}\left(1+k_{\perp}^{2} \rho_{i}^{2}\right)\left(q_{i} \delta \hat{n}_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta \hat{n}_{e}\right) \tag{236}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, transforming the above equation back to the real space, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\left(1-\rho_{i}^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2}\right) \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi-\frac{q_{i}}{\varepsilon_{0}}\left(\frac{q_{i} n_{i 0}}{T_{i}} \rho_{i}^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi\right)=\frac{1}{\varepsilon_{0}}\left(1-\rho_{i}^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2}\right)\left(q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta n_{e}\right) . \tag{237}
\end{equation*}
$$

Neglecting the Debye shielding term, the above equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\left(\frac{\rho_{i}^{2}}{\lambda_{D i}^{2}} \nabla_{\perp}^{2} \delta \Phi\right)=\frac{1}{\varepsilon_{0}}\left(1-\rho_{i}^{2} \nabla_{\perp}^{2}\right)\left(q_{i} \delta n_{i}^{\prime}+q_{e} \delta n_{e}\right), \tag{238}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the equation actually solved in many gyrokinetic codes, where $\lambda_{D i}^{2}=\varepsilon_{0} T_{i} /\left(q_{i}^{2} n_{i 0}\right)$.

## 9 Polarization density matrix obtained by numerically integrating in phase space using grid

In Sec. 8, to evaluate the polarization density, the potential $\delta \Phi$ is Fourier expanded in space using local Cartesian coordinates, and then the double gyro-angle integration of each harmonic is expressed as the Bessel function. (It seems that the original motivation of using the Fourier expansion here is to facilitate analytical treatment and is not designed for numerical use. GEM code does make use of the local Fourier expansion in its numerical implementation, where the local perpendicular wave number needs to be estimated numerically, which seems awkward.)

In this section, we avoid using the local Fourier expansion, and directly express the double gyro-angle integral as linear combination of values of $\delta \Phi$ at spatial grid-points. The polarization density is given by Eq. 191, i.e.,

$$
\begin{gather*}
n_{p}(\mathbf{x})=\frac{q}{m} \int d \mathbf{v}\left(\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) .  \tag{239}\\
n_{p}=M \delta \Phi \tag{240}
\end{gather*}
$$

### 9.1 Direct evaluation of the double gyrophase integration

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(\mathbf{x})=-\frac{q}{m} \int d \mathbf{v}\left(\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \tag{241}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using $d \mathbf{v}=v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} d \alpha$, the above integration is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(\mathbf{x})=-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{242}
\end{equation*}
$$

where use has been made of the assumption that $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ is uniform in $\alpha$ in $\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$ coordinates, and thus is moved outside of the $\alpha$ integration. Using the definition of gyro-averaging $(2 \pi)^{-1} \int_{0}^{2 \pi}(\ldots) d \alpha^{\prime}$, the above integration is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(\mathbf{x})=-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left(\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \delta \Phi d \alpha^{\prime}\right) \tag{243}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the gyro-averaging is performed in the guiding-center space, i.e., performed by varying the gyroangle $\alpha^{\prime}$ while keeping guiding-center position $\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}$, and $v_{\|}$constant. Using the definition of $\delta \Phi_{g}$ (i.e., its relation with $\delta \Phi$ ):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \Phi_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\perp}\right)=\delta \Phi(\mathbf{x}) \tag{244}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the particle location $\boldsymbol{x}$ is computed from the guiding-center location by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{X}+\rho(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \approx \mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})} \tag{245}
\end{equation*}
$$

then $A(\mathbf{x})$ is written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A(\mathbf{x}) \\
& =-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left[\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right) d \alpha^{\prime}\right] \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left[\frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathbf{v}_{\perp}=\mathbf{v}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ denotes a perpendicular velocity corresponding to a discrete gyro-angle $\alpha_{j}^{\prime}$.

Next, in order to perform the remaining velocity space integration, transform back to the particle coordinates (because the velocity integration is performed in the particle coordinates, i.e., it is performed by keeping the particle coordinate $\mathbf{x}$ constant):

$$
\begin{align*}
& A(\mathbf{x})=-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \\
& \times \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left[\frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{X})}{\Omega(\mathbf{X})}\right)\right] \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \\
& \times \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left[\frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}\right)\right] \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \\
& \times \frac{2 \pi}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{i}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}\right) . \tag{246}
\end{align*}
$$

For notation ease, define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \rho_{i j}=\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{i}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})}-\mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(v_{\perp}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right) \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x})}{\Omega(\mathbf{x})} \tag{247}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Delta \rho_{i j}$ is a function of $\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}, \alpha_{i}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}\right)$. Then Eq. 246 ) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(\mathbf{x})=-\frac{q}{m} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} d v_{\perp} \frac{\partial F_{i 0}}{\partial \varepsilon} v_{\perp} \frac{2 \pi}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\Delta \rho_{i j}\right) \tag{248}
\end{equation*}
$$

The guiding-center transform and its inverse involved in the above are illustrated in Fig. 5. Then the double gyro-angle integral appearing in the polarization density is approximated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha\left(\int_{0}^{2 \pi} \delta \Phi(\mathbf{x}) d \alpha^{\prime}\right) \approx \frac{(2 \pi)^{2}}{N_{1} N_{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}_{i j}\right) \tag{249}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N_{1}=4, N_{2}=4$ for the case shown in Fig. 5. This gives how to evaluate the double gyro-angle integration using the discrete values of $\delta \Phi_{i j}$.

The spatial points $\mathbf{x}_{i j}$ appearing in Eq. 249) are not necessarily grid points. Linear interpolations are used to express $\delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}_{i j}\right)$ as linear combination of values of $\delta \Phi$ at grid-points.

### 9.2 Performing the parallel velocity integration

Assume that $F_{0}$ is Maxwellian, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}=-\frac{m}{T} f_{M}=-\frac{m}{T} \frac{n_{0}}{(2 \pi T / m)^{3 / 2}} \exp \left(\frac{-m v_{\|}^{2}}{2 T}\right) \exp \left(\frac{-m v_{\perp}^{2}}{2 T}\right) . \tag{250}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 5: Given a $v_{\perp}$, then the double gyro-angle integration in Eq. 243) at a particle location $\mathbf{x}$ is evaluated by the following steps: Use the guiding center transform to get guiding-center locations (four locations are shown in this case, namely $\mathbf{X}_{i}$ with $i=1,2,3,4$, corresponding gyro-angle $\alpha_{i}$ with $i=1,2,3,4 ; 2$.) For each guiding-center location, use the inverse guidingcenter transform to calculate points on the corresponding gyro-ring (four points are shown for each guiding-center $\mathbf{X}_{i}$ in this case, namely $\mathbf{x}_{i j}$ with $j=1,2,3,4$, corresponding gyro angle $\alpha_{j}^{\prime}$ with $j=1,2,3,4$.)

Note that $\Delta \rho_{i j}$ is independent of $v_{\|}$. Then the integration over $v_{\|}$in Eq. (248) can be analytically performed, yielding

$$
\begin{align*}
A(\mathbf{x}) & =\frac{q}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\|} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\|}^{2}}{2}\right) \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \frac{n_{0}}{(2 \pi)^{3 / 2}} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \times \frac{2 \pi}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\Delta \rho_{i j}\right) \\
& =n_{0} \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \frac{1}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}} \frac{q}{T} \delta \Phi\left(\mathbf{x}+\Delta \rho_{i j}\right) . \tag{251}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{v}_{\|}=v_{\|} / v_{t}, \bar{v}_{\perp}=v_{\perp} / v_{t}, \quad v_{t}=\sqrt{T / m}$, and use has been made of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp \left(-\frac{x^{2}}{2}\right) d x=\sqrt{2 \pi} \tag{252}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 9.3 Toroidal Fourier transform of polarization density in field-aligned coordinates

In field-aligned coordinates $(x, y, z)$, Fourier expansion of $\delta \Phi$ along $y$ is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \Phi(\mathbf{x})=\sum_{n=-N_{t}}^{N_{t}} \exp \left(\ln \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}} y\right) \delta \Phi_{n}(x, z), \tag{253}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\iota=\sqrt{-1}, N_{t}$ is the number of toroidal harmonics included. Use this in Eq. 251, yielding

$$
\begin{align*}
A(\mathbf{x}) & =n_{0} \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \times \frac{1}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}}\left[\frac{q}{T} \sum_{n=-N_{t}}^{N_{t}} \exp \left(\iota n \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}}\left(y+\Delta \rho_{i j y}\right)\right) \delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z+\Delta \rho_{i j z}\right)\right] \\
& =n_{0} \sum_{n=-N_{t}}^{N_{t}} \exp \left(\iota n \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}} y\right) \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \times \frac{1}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}}\left[\exp \left(\ln \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}} \Delta \rho_{i j y}\right) \frac{q}{T} \delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z+\Delta \rho_{i j z}\right)\right] \tag{254}
\end{align*}
$$

From Eq. 254), the Fourier expansion coefficient of $A(\mathbf{x})$ in $y$ can be identified, which is

$$
\begin{align*}
A_{n}(x, z) & =n_{0} \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \times \frac{1}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}}\left[\exp \left(\iota n \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}} \Delta \rho_{i j y}\right) \frac{q}{T} \delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z+\Delta \rho_{i j z}\right)\right] . \tag{255}
\end{align*}
$$

Let us make the following approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z+\Delta \rho_{i j z}\right) \approx \delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z\right) \tag{256}
\end{equation*}
$$

which should be a good approximation since the variation of $\delta \Phi$ along a field line over a distance of a Larmor radius is small. Then expression 255 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& A_{n}(x, z) \approx n_{0} \int_{0}^{\infty} d \bar{v}_{\perp} \bar{v}_{\perp} \exp \left(\frac{-\bar{v}_{\perp}^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \times \frac{1}{N_{1}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{1}} \frac{1}{N_{2}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{2}}\left[\exp \left(\iota n \frac{2 \pi}{L_{y}} \Delta \rho_{i j y}\right) \frac{q}{T} \delta \Phi_{n}\left(x+\Delta \rho_{i j x}, z\right)\right] \tag{257}
\end{align*}
$$

The approximation 256 makes the operator $A_{n}$ on $\delta \Phi_{n}$ become local in $z$ direction, i.e., it involves the value of $\delta \Phi_{n}$ at a single location $z$. This makes $A_{n}(x, z)$ reduce to a 1D operator on $\delta \Phi_{n}$ in the $x$ direction.

### 9.4 Using MC integration, to be continued, not necessary

The integration we try to express is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
A_{i j k} & \approx \frac{1}{V_{i j k}} \int_{V_{i j k}} d \mathbf{x} n_{p}(\mathbf{x}) \\
& =\frac{1}{V_{i j k}} \int_{V_{i j k}} d \mathbf{x} \int d \mathbf{v}\left(\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon}\right) \tag{258}
\end{align*}
$$

where $A_{i j k}$ is the value of $n_{p}(\mathbf{x})$ at a grid-point, which is approximated by the spatial averaging of $n_{p}(\mathbf{x})$ over the cell whose center is the grid-point, $V_{i j k}$ is the volume of the cell. We will use Monte-Carlo guiding-center markers to compute the above cell average.

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{i j k}^{(1)} & =-\frac{q}{m} \frac{1}{V_{i j k}} \sum_{p} \sum_{\alpha}\left(\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{1}{g}\right) \\
& =-\frac{q}{m} \frac{1}{V_{i j k}} \sum_{p}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} \sum_{\alpha}\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{1}{g}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Nearest neighbour interpolation

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{i j k}^{(2)} & =-\frac{q}{m} \frac{1}{V_{i j k}} \sum_{p} \sum_{\alpha}\left(\delta \Phi \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{1}{g}\right) \\
& =-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\delta \Phi_{i j k}}{V_{i j k}} \sum_{p} \sum_{\alpha}\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{1}{g}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Later, I found that evaluating the polarization density using grid work well. Therefore there is no need to evaluate it using MC markers, which is more complicated.

## A Implementation of gyrokinetics in particle-in-cell (PIC) codes

## A. 1 Monte-Carlo evaluation of distribution function moment at gridpoints

Suppose that the 6D guiding-center phase-space ( $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}$ ) is described by $\left(\psi, \theta, \phi, v_{\|}, \alpha, v_{\perp}\right)$ coordinates. The Jacobian of the coordinate system is given by $\mathcal{J}=\mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$, where $\mathcal{J}_{r}=\mathcal{J}(\psi, \theta)$ is the Jacobian of the coordinates $(\psi, \theta, \phi)$.

Suppose that we sample the 6D phase-space by using a probability function $P\left(\psi, \theta, \phi, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$. (Then the effecitive probability function used in rejection method is $P \mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$.). We will sample a distribution function $\delta f_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$ that happens to be independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$ using the above markers.

Since there is no indication that some values of $\alpha$ would be more important than others, it is natural to smaple $\alpha$ using a uniform probability function, i.e., $P\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$can be chosen to be independent of $\alpha$.

In terms of sampling $\delta f_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$, there is no need to specify $\alpha$ because both $f_{g}$ and marker distribution $g=N_{p} P$ are indepedent of $\alpha$, and thus the weight $\delta f_{g} / g$ is also independent of $\alpha$. It turns out that sampling $\alpha$ is necessary in simulations. The reason is as follows. The density needed in solving the field equation is the moement of the particle distribution function $\delta f_{p}\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}\right)$ at fixed $\mathbf{x}$, and $\delta f_{p}\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}\right)$ is not uniform in $\alpha^{\prime}$. [Proof: $\delta f_{p}\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}\right)$ with only $\alpha^{\prime}$ changing corresponds to both $\mathbf{X}$ and $\alpha$ changing in $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$coordinates, and thus the corresponding $\delta f_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$, which is equal to $\delta f_{p}\left(\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}\right)$, is varying because $\delta f_{g}$ is dependent on $\mathbf{X}$ and is independent of $\alpha$.] Therefore $\alpha^{\prime}$ needs to be specified in ( $\mathbf{x}, v_{\perp}^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}, v_{\|}^{\prime}$ ) coordinates, which can be achieved by specifying $\alpha$ in $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}\right)$because of $\alpha^{\prime}=\alpha$.

From the perspective of programming, it is ready to understand why $\alpha$ needs to be specified. When computing density at grid-points, we need to compute particle locations from the guidingcenter locations which requires us to specify the gyro-angle $\alpha$ for each marker.

Markers in guiding-center space ( $\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, \alpha, v_{\|}$) with fixed ( $\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}$) but varying $\alpha$ correspond to markers in particle space with varying locations and varying $\alpha^{\prime}$ (marker weights are constant since marker weights in guiding-center space with only $\alpha$ varying are constant). In the PIC method of computing the particle density at fixed $\mathbf{x}$, the contribution of each particle marker to the density is solely determined by the distance of the particle marker to the fixed $\mathbf{x}$ (the gyro-angle $\alpha^{\prime}$ has not effect here). Therefore different values of $\alpha$ contributes differently to the density, and thus the resolution of $\alpha$ matters.

For a marker with coordinators $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$, where $\alpha$ is the gyro-angle, the corresponding particle position can be calculated by using the inverse guiding-center transformation (19). Then we can deposit the marker weight to grid-points in the same way that we do in conventional PIC simulations. Looping over all markers, we build the particle density at grids.

Compared with conventional PIC methods, where particle positions are directly sampled, what is the benefit of sampling guiding-center positions and then transform them back to the particle positions? More computations are involved since we need to numerically perform the inverse guiding-center transformation. The answer lies in the important fact that the distribution function $f_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$ that needs to be numerically evolved in gyrokinetic simulation is actually independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$. Furthermore, we use a probability density function $P$ that is independent of $\alpha$ to sample the 6D phase space ( $\left.\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$. Then the marker weight $w \equiv$ $f_{g} /\left(N_{p} P\right)$ is independent of $\alpha$, where $N_{p}$ is number of markers loaded.

Suppose we have a concrete sampling of $f_{g}$ in the 6 D phase-space $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$, i.e., $\left(\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}, \alpha_{j}, w_{j}\right)$ with $j=1, \ldots, N_{p}$, then we can do the inverse guiding-center transform and then deposit particles to the grids to obtain a moment (e.g. density).

Since $P \mathcal{J}_{r v}$, where $\mathcal{J}_{r v}=\mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$ is the Jacobian of $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$, is independent of $\alpha$, the sampling $\alpha_{j}$ with $j=0,1, \ldots, N_{p}$ are uniform distributed random numbers. Therefore we can generate another sampling of $\alpha$ (denoted by $\alpha_{j}^{\prime}$ with $j=1, \ldots, N_{p}$ ) using random number generators and combine $\alpha_{j}^{\prime}$ with the old sampling $\left(\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}\right)$ to obtain a new sampling $\left(\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}, \alpha_{j}^{\prime}, w_{j}^{\prime}\right)$. The values of $w$ at the new sampling points are equal to the original values, i.e., $w_{j}^{\prime}=w_{j}$ since the particle weight $w=f_{g} /\left(N_{p} P\right)$ is independent of $\alpha$. Using the new sampling and following the same procedures given above, we can estimate values of the moment at grid-points again, which will differ from the estimation obtained using the old sampling. Taking the average of the two estimations will give a more accurate estimation because the resolution in the gyro-angle is increased.
[Note that even if $P \mathcal{J}_{r v}$ is dependent on $\alpha$ due to the possible dependence of $\mathcal{J}_{r v}$ on $\alpha$, we still can easily generate a new set of sampling which differs from the old sampling only in $\alpha$. Specifically, in the rejection method, we use the old sampling ( $\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}$ ) for each reject step and only adjust $\alpha$ to satisfy the acceptance criteria.]

We can also construct a new sampling by replacing $\alpha_{j}$ by $\alpha_{j}+\Delta$, where $\Delta$ is a constant. Then the new sampling is given by ( $\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}, \alpha_{j}+\Delta, w_{j}^{\prime}$ ) with $j=1, \ldots, N_{p}$. Since the original sampling probability function $P \mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$ is independent of $\alpha$, then $\left(\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}, \alpha_{j}+\Delta\right)$ is still a consistent sampling that can be generated by the original probability function $P \mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$. Furthermore, since the particle weight $w=f_{g} /\left(N_{p} P\right)$ is independent of $\alpha$, we infer that the values of $w$ at the new sampling points are equal to the original values, i.e., $w_{j}^{\prime}=w_{j}$.

In doing the deposition, each marker has a single gyro-angle. Due to the independence of the weight $\left(w=f_{g} /\left(N_{p} P\right)\right)$ of the gyro-angle, the resolution over the gyro-angle can be increased in a way that there can be several gyro-angles for a single ( $\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}$ ). This gives the wrong impression that the gyro-angle of a guiding-center marker is arbitrary. The correct understanding is that given above, i.e., we do 4 separate sampling of the phase space and then average the results.

In the code, the gyro-angle is defined relative to the direction $\nabla \psi /|\nabla \psi|$ at the guidingcenter position. Specifically, the gyro-angle is defined as the included angle between $\nabla \psi /|\nabla \psi|$ and $-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x}) / \Omega(\mathbf{x})$, where $\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x}) / \Omega(\mathbf{x})$ is approximated by the value at the guiding-center location.

Then $\left(\mathbf{X}_{j}, v_{\perp j}, v_{\| j}\right)$ can be evolved by using the guiding-center motion equation. (It is obvious how to evalute the gyro-averaging of the electromagnetic fields needed in pusing markers.)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi(\mathbf{x})=\sum_{i, j} \Phi_{i j} c_{i j}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{259}
\end{equation*}
$$

## A. 2 Monte-Carlo sampling of 6D guiding-center phase-space

Suppose that the 6 D guiding-center phase-space $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v})$ is described by $\left(\psi, \theta, \phi, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}, \alpha\right)$ coordinates. The Jacobian of the coordinate system is given by $\mathcal{J}=\mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}$, where $\mathcal{J}_{r}=\mathcal{J}(\psi, \theta)$ is the Jacobian of the coordinates $(\psi, \theta, \phi)$. Suppose that we sample the 6D phase-space by using the following probability density function:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(\psi, \theta, \phi, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}, \alpha\right)=\frac{1}{V_{r}}\left(\frac{m}{2 \pi T}\right)^{3 / 2} \exp \left[-\frac{m\left(v_{\|}^{2}+v_{\perp}^{2}\right)}{2 T}\right] \tag{260}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $V_{r}$ is the volume of the spatial simulation box, $T$ is a constant temperature. $P$ given above is independent of $\psi, \theta, \phi$ and $\alpha$. It is ready to verify that the above $P$ satisfies the following normalization condition:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{V_{r}} \int P d \mathbf{v} d \mathbf{X}=\int_{V_{r}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} P v_{\perp} d \alpha d v_{\perp} d v_{\|} \mathcal{J}_{r} d \psi d \theta d \phi=1 \tag{261}
\end{equation*}
$$

I use the rejection method to numerically generate $N_{p}$ markers that satisfy the above probability density function. [The effective probability density function actually used in the rejection method is $P^{\prime}$, which is related to $P$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P^{\prime}=\left|\mathcal{J}_{r} \mathcal{J}_{v}\right| P=\left|\mathcal{J}_{r}(\psi, \theta)\right| v_{\perp} P \tag{262}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $P^{\prime}$ does not depend on the gyro-angle $\alpha$.]
Then the weight of a marker is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=\frac{\delta f_{g}\left(\psi, \theta, \phi, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}\right)}{N_{p} P} \tag{263}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since both $f_{g}$ and $P$ is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha, w$ is also independent of $\alpha$.
The numerical representation of $\delta f_{g}$ is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \tilde{f}_{g}=\frac{1}{\mathcal{J}_{r} v_{\perp}} \sum_{j}^{N_{p}} w_{j} \delta\left(\psi-\psi_{j}\right) \delta\left(\theta-\theta_{j}\right) \delta\left(\phi-\phi_{j}\right) \delta\left(v_{\|}-v_{\| j}\right) \delta\left(v_{\perp}-v_{\perp j}\right) \delta\left(\alpha-\alpha_{j}\right) \tag{264}
\end{equation*}
$$

Although the distribution function $\delta f_{g}$ to be sampled is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$, we still need to specify the gyro-angle because we need to use the inverse guiding-center transformation, which needs the gyro-angle. Each marker needs to have a specific gyro-angle value $\alpha_{j}$ so that we know how to transform its $\mathbf{X}_{j}$ to $\mathbf{x}_{j}$ and then do the charge deposition in $\mathbf{x}$ space.

To increase the resolution over the gyro-angle (the quantity of intest to us, e.g., density, is the integration of the particle distribution function at fixed spatial location, and the distribution at the fixed location is not uniform in the gyro-angle), we need to load more markers. However, thanks to the fact that both sampling probability density function $P$ and $\delta f_{g}$ are independent of $\alpha$, the resolution over the gyro-angle can be increased in a simple way.

$$
\begin{equation*}
n(\mathbf{x})=\frac{n_{1}(\mathbf{x})+n_{2}(\mathbf{x})+n_{3}(\mathbf{x})+n_{4}(\mathbf{x})}{4} \tag{265}
\end{equation*}
$$

This corresponds to sampling the 6 D phase-space 4 separate times (each time with identical sampling points in ( $\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}$ ) but different sampling points in $\alpha$ ) and then using the averaging of the 4 Monte-Carlo integrals to estimate the exact value. This estimation can also be (roughly) considered as a Monte-Carlo estimation using 4 times larger number of markers as that is originally used (the Monte-Carlo estimation using truly 4 time larger number of markers is more accurate than the result we obtained above because the former also increase the resolution of $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}\right)$ while the latter keeps the resolution of ( $\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, v_{\perp}$ ) unchanged.)

In numerical code, we choose $N$ sampling points that are evenly distributed on the gyroring ( $N$ is usually 4 as a compromise between efficiency and accuracy). Denote the Mote-Carlo weight of the $j$ th marker by $w_{j}$. Then the weight is evenly split by the $N$ sub-markers on the gyro-ring. Therefore each sub-marker have a Monte-Carlo weight $w_{j} / N$. Then calculating the integration (271) at a grid corresponds to depositing all the $N$ sub-markers associated with each guiding-center marker to the grid, as is illustrated in Fig. 6. However, interpreting in this way is confusing to me because, with a single sampling of the phase-space, the phase-space volume or weight can not be easily split. I prefer the above interpretation that the 6 D phase space is sampled 4 separate times and thus we get 4 estimations and finally we take the averaging of these 4 estimations. It took a long time for me to finally find this way of understanding.

In summary, the phase-space to be sampled in gyrokinetic simulations are still 6 D rather than 5 D . In this sense, the statement that gyrokinetic simulation works in a 5 D phase space is misleading. We are still working in the 6 D phase-space. The only subtle thing is that the sixth dimension, i.e., gyro-angle, can be sampled in an easy way that is independent of the other 5 variables.

In numerical implementation, the gyro-angle may not be explicitly used. We just try to find 4 arbitrary points on the gyro-ring that are easy to calculate. Some codes (e.g. ORB5) introduces a random variable to rotate these 4 points for different markers so that the gyro-angle can be sampled less biased.

From the view of particle simulations, the gyrokinetic model can be considered as a noise reduction method, where the averaging over the gyro-angle is equivalent to a time averaging over a gyro-period, which reduces the fluctuation level (in both time and space) associated with evaluating the Monte-Carlo phase integration. Here the averaging in gyrokinetic particle


Figure 6: The spatial grid in the plane perpendicular to the equilibrium magnetic field, a guidingcenter marker $C$, and its gyro-ring with 4 sampling points (sub-markers) on it. The 4 sub-markers are calculated by using the transformation (19) (inverse guiding-center transform). Assume that Monte-Carlo weight of the guiding-center marker $C$ is $w_{j}$. Then The Monte-Carlo weight of each sub-marker is $w_{j} / 4$. The value of integration (271) at a grid point is approximated by $I / \Delta V$, where $I$ is the Monte-Carlo integration of all sub-markers (associated with all guiding-center markers) in the cell, $\Delta V$ is the cell volume. The cell associated with a grid-point (e.g., $A$ ) is indicated by the dashed rectangle (this is for the 2 D projection, the cell is 3 D and it is a cube). If the Dirac delta function is used as the shape function of the sub-markers, then calculating the contribution of a sub-marker to a grid corresponds to the nearest-point interpolation (for example, the 4 sub-markers will contribute nothing to grid point $B$ since no-sub marker is located within the cell). In practice, the flat-top shape function with its support equal to the cell size is often used, then the depositing corresponds to linearly interpolating the weight of each submarker to the nearby grids.
simulation refers to taking several points on a gyro-ring when depositing markers to spatial grids to obtain the density and current on the grids. (Another gyro-averaging appears in evaluating the guiding-center drift.) In gyrokinetic particle simulation, even a step size smaller than a gyro-period is taken, the quantities used in the model is still the ones averaged over one gyroperiod. In this sense, a gyrokinetic simulation is only meaningful when the time step size is larger than one gyro-period. [**Some authors may disagree with that the gyro-averaging is a time-averaging. They may consider the gyro-averaging as the phase-space integration over the gyro-angle coordinate. This view seems to be right in Euler simulations but seems to be wrong in particle simulations. The reason is as follows. For each marker, choose a random gyro-phase and then do the inverse transformation to obtain particle position, and sum over all markers (this corresponds to phase-space Monte-Carlo integration, which include the gyro-angle integration, so no further gyro-angle integration is needed); choose another random gyro-phase and repeat the above procedure (this can be interpreted as do the phase-space Monte-Carlo integration at another time), choose further random gyro-phase for each marker and repeat. Finally averaging all the above values to obtain the final estimation of the phase-space integration. This amounts to a time-averaging over a gyro-motion. In summary, sampling several times with different gyrophases for each marker and taking the average amounts to the time averaging over gyro-motion**]

When doing the time-average over the ion cyclotron motion, the time variation of the lowfrequency mode is negligible and only the spatial variation of the modes is important. For the gyro-motion, only the gyro-angle is changing and all the other variables, $\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\perp}, v_{\|}\right)$, are approximately constant. As a result, this time averaging finally reduces to a gyro-averaging.

I am always reasoning in terms of particle position and velocity, considering the guiding-center location as an image of the particle position. When working in the guiding-center coordinates, I always reason by transforming back to the particle position. This reasoning is clear and help me avoid some confusions I used to have.

## A. 3 Distribution function transform** check

In the above, we assume that $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ are related to each other by the guiding-center transformation (17) or $\sqrt{19}$, i.e., $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{X}$ are not independent. For some cases, it may be convenient to treat $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{X}$ as independent variables and express the guiding-center transformation via an integral of the Dirac delta function. For example,

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})=\int f_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}) \delta^{3}(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{x}+\boldsymbol{\rho}) d \mathbf{X} \tag{266}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{X}$ are considered as independent variables, $\boldsymbol{\rho}$ is the gyroradius evaluated at $\mathbf{x}$, $\delta^{3}(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{X}-\boldsymbol{\rho})$ is the three-dimensional Dirac delta function. [In terms of general coordinates $\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right)$, the three-dimensional Dirac delta function is defined via the 1D Dirac delta function as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta^{3}(\mathbf{x})=\frac{1}{|\mathcal{J}|} \delta\left(x_{1}\right) \delta\left(x_{2}\right) \delta\left(x_{3}\right) \tag{267}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{J}$ is the the Jacobian of the general coordinate system. The Jacobian is included in order to make $\delta^{3}(\mathbf{x})$ satisfy the normalization condition $\int \delta^{3}(\mathbf{x}) d \mathbf{x}=\int \delta^{3}(\mathbf{x})|\mathcal{J}| d x_{1} d x_{2} d x_{3}=1$.]

Expression 266) can be considered as a transformation that transforms an arbitrary function from the guiding-center coordinates to the particle coordinates. Similarly,

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v})=\int f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \delta^{3}(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{X}-\boldsymbol{\rho}) d \mathbf{x} \tag{268}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a transformation that transforms an arbitrary function from the the particle coordinates to the guiding-center coordinates.

## A. 4 Moments of distribution function expressed as integration over guiding-center variables

In terms of particle variables ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}$ ), it is straightforward to calculate the moment of the distribution function. For example, the number density $n(\mathbf{x})$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
n(\mathbf{x})=\int f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{269}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, it is a little difficult to calculate $n(\mathbf{x})$ at real space location $\mathbf{x}$ by using the guidingcenter variables ( $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}$ ). This is because holding $\mathbf{x}$ constant and changing $\mathbf{v}$, which is required by
the integration in Eq. 269), means the guiding-center variable $\mathbf{X}$ is changing according to Eq. (17). Using Eq. (24), expression (269) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n(\mathbf{x})=\int f_{g}(\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}), \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{270}
\end{equation*}
$$

As is mentioned above, the $d \mathbf{v}$ integration in Eq. 270) should be performed by holding $\mathbf{x}$ constant and changing $\mathbf{v}$, which means the guiding-center variable $\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ is changing. This means that, in ( $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}$ ) space, the above integration is a (generalized) curve integral along the the curve $\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{v})=\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\rho}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ with $\mathbf{x}$ being constant. Treating $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ as independent variables and using the Dirac delta function $\delta$, this curve integral can be written as the following double integration over the independent variables $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
n(\mathbf{x})=\iint f_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v}) \delta^{3}(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{x}+\boldsymbol{\rho}) d \mathbf{v} d \mathbf{X} \tag{271}
\end{equation*}
$$

Another perspective of interpreting Eq. (271) is that we are first using the transformation 266 to transform $f_{g}$ to $f_{p}$ and then integrating $f_{p}$ in the velocity space.

## B Diamagnetic flow ${ }^{* *}$ check**

The perturbed distribution function $\delta F$ given in Eq. 145 contains two terms. The first term is gyro-phase dependent while the second term is gyro-phase independent. The perpendicular velocity moment of the second term will give rise to the so-called diamagnetic flow. For this case, it is crucial to distinguish between the distribution function in terms of the guiding-center variables, $f_{g}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{v})$, and that in terms of the particle variables, $f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$. In terms of these denotations, equation 145 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta F_{g}=\frac{q}{m}\left(\delta \Phi-\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0 g}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\delta f_{g} . \tag{272}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, consider the perpendicular flow $\mathbf{U}_{\perp}$ carried by $\delta f_{g}$. This flow is defined by the corresponding distribution function in terms of the particle variables, $\delta f_{p}$, via,

$$
\begin{equation*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp}=\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \delta f_{p}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{273}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $n$ is the number density defined by $n=\int \delta f_{p} d \mathbf{v}$. Using the relation between the particle distribution function and guiding-center distribution function, equation 273 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp}=\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\rho}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{274}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the Taylor expansion near $\mathbf{x}, \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\rho}, \mathbf{v})$ can be approximated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}-\boldsymbol{\rho}, \mathbf{v}) \approx \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})-\boldsymbol{\rho} \cdot \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \tag{275}
\end{equation*}
$$

Plugging this expression into Eq. (274), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp} \approx \int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v}-\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \boldsymbol{\rho} \cdot \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{276}
\end{equation*}
$$

As mentioned above, $\delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$. It is obvious that the first integration is zero and thus Eq. 276) is reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp}=-\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \boldsymbol{\rho} \cdot \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \tag{277}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the definition $\boldsymbol{\rho}=-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} / \Omega$, the above equation is written

$$
\begin{align*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp} & =\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \frac{\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \cdot \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp}\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})\right) \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\perp} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\perp} d \mathbf{v} \tag{278}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\mathbf{H}=\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$, which is independent of the gyro-angle $\alpha$ because both $\mathbf{e}_{\|}(\mathbf{x}) / \Omega(\mathbf{x})$ and $\delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$ are independent of $\alpha$. Next, we try to perform the integration over $\alpha$ in Eq. (278). In terms of velocity space cylindrical coordinates $\left(v_{\|}, v_{\perp}, \alpha\right), \mathbf{v}_{\perp}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{v}_{\perp}=v_{\perp}(\hat{\mathbf{x}} \cos \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{y}} \sin \alpha) \tag{279}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ are two arbitrary unit vectors perpendicular each other and both perpendicular to $\mathbf{B}_{0}(\mathbf{x}) . \mathbf{H}$ can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}=H_{x} \hat{\mathbf{x}}+H_{y} \hat{\mathbf{y}}, \tag{280}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $H_{x}$ and $H_{y}$ are independent of $\alpha$. Using these in Eq. 278, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp} & =\int v_{\perp}(\hat{\mathbf{x}} \cos \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{y}} \sin \alpha) v_{\perp}\left(H_{x} \cos \alpha+H_{y} \sin \alpha\right) d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\int v_{\perp}^{2}\left[\hat{\mathbf{x}}\left(H_{x} \cos ^{2} \alpha+H_{y} \sin \alpha \cos \alpha\right)+\hat{\mathbf{y}}\left(H_{x} \cos \alpha \sin \alpha+H_{y} \sin ^{2} \alpha\right)\right] d \mathbf{v} \tag{281}
\end{align*}
$$

Using $d \mathbf{v}=v_{\perp} d v_{\|} d v_{\perp} d \alpha$, the above equation is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
n \mathbf{U}_{\perp} & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} v_{\perp}^{2}\left[\hat{\mathbf{x}}\left(H_{x} \cos ^{2} \alpha+H_{y} \sin \alpha \cos \alpha\right)+\hat{\mathbf{y}}\left(H_{x} \cos \alpha \sin \alpha+H_{y} \sin ^{2} \alpha\right)\right] d \alpha \\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} v_{\perp}^{2}\left(\hat{\mathbf{x}} H_{x} \cos ^{2} \alpha+\hat{\mathbf{y}} H_{y} \sin ^{2} \alpha\right) d \alpha \\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp}\left[v_{\perp}^{2}\left(\hat{\mathbf{x}} H_{x} \pi+\hat{\mathbf{y}} H_{y} \pi\right)\right] \\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp}\left[v_{\perp}^{2} \mathbf{H} \pi\right] \\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp}\left[v_{\perp}^{2} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \pi\right] \\
& =\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \frac{v_{\perp}^{2}}{2} 2 \pi \\
& =\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{m \Omega} \times \nabla \delta p_{\perp} \tag{282}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta p_{\perp} & \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d v_{\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} v_{\perp} d v_{\perp} \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \frac{m v_{\perp}^{2}}{2} 2 \pi \\
& =\int \delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \frac{m v_{\perp}^{2}}{2} d \mathbf{v} \tag{283}
\end{align*}
$$

is the perpendicular pressure carried by $\delta f_{g}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v})$. The flow given by Eq. 282 ) is called the diamagnetic flow.

## C Transform gyrokinetic equation from $(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha)$ to $\left(\mathbf{X}, \mu, v_{\|}, \alpha\right)$ coordinates

The gyrokinetic equation given above is written in terms of variables ( $\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha$ ), where $\alpha$ is the gyro-phase. Next, we transform it into coordinates $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}\right)$ which is defined by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathbf{X}^{\prime}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha)=\mathbf{X}  \tag{284}\\
\mu^{\prime}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha)=\mu \\
\alpha^{\prime}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha)=\alpha \\
v_{\|}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha)= \pm \sqrt{2\left(\varepsilon-\mu B_{0}(\mathbf{X})\right)}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Use this definition and the chain rule, the gradient operators in ( $\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon, \alpha$ ) variables are written, in terms of ( $\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}$ ) variables, as

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}}\right|_{\mu, \varepsilon, \alpha} & =\left.\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right|_{\mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}}+\left.\frac{\partial \mu^{\prime}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}\right|_{\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}}+\left.\frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\|}}\right|_{\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}}+\left.\frac{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}\right|_{\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}} \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}+0 \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}-\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\|}}+0 \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}} \tag{285}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial \varepsilon}\right|_{\mathbf{X}, \mu, \alpha} & =\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial \mu^{\prime}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\|}}+\frac{\partial \alpha^{\prime}}{\partial \varepsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}} \\
& =0 \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}+0 \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}+\frac{1}{v_{\|}} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\|}}+0 \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha^{\prime}} \tag{286}
\end{align*}
$$

Then, in terms of independent variable $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}\right)$, equation 142 is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right] \delta G_{0}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{d \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}-\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{d \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}\right)-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}} \tag{287}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$ and $\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}$ involve the gyro-averaging operator $\langle\ldots\rangle_{\alpha}$. The gyro-averaging operator in $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}\right)$ coordinates is similar to that in the old coordinates since the perpendicular
velocity variable $\mu$ is identical between the two coordinate systems. Also note that the perturbed guiding-center velocity $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}=\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \tag{288}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\partial / \partial \mathbf{X}$ (rather than $\left.\partial / \partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}\right)$ is used. Since $\delta \phi(\mathbf{x})=\delta \phi_{g}\left(\mathbf{X}, \mu^{\prime}, \alpha^{\prime}\right)$, which is independent of $v_{\|}$, then Eq. 285) indicates that $\partial \delta \phi / \partial \mathbf{X}=\partial \delta \phi / \partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}$.

Dropping terms of order higher than $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, equation 287 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right] \delta G_{0}-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right)+\left(\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}\right) \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}} \tag{289}
\end{align*}
$$

Similarly, in terms of independent variable $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}, \alpha^{\prime}\right)$, equation 147 is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right] \delta f-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right)+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}}, \tag{290}
\end{align*}
$$

The guiding-center velocity in the macroscopic (equilibrium) field is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}=\frac{\mathbf{B}_{0}^{\star}}{B_{\| 0}^{\star}} v_{\|}+\frac{\mu}{\Omega B_{\| 0}^{\star}} \mathbf{B}_{0} \times \nabla B_{0}+\frac{1}{B_{0} B_{\| 0}^{\star}} \mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0} \tag{291}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathbf{B}_{0}^{\star}=\mathbf{B}_{0}+B_{0} \frac{v_{\|}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}  \tag{292}\\
B_{\|}^{\star} \equiv \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{B}^{\star}=B\left(1+\frac{v_{\|}}{\Omega} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b}\right), \tag{293}
\end{gather*}
$$

Using $B_{\| 0}^{\star} \approx B_{0}$, then expression $(291)$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}=v_{\|} \mathbf{b}+\underbrace{\frac{v_{\|}^{2}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}}_{\text {curvature drift }}+\underbrace{\frac{\mu}{\Omega B_{0}} \mathbf{B}_{0} \times \nabla B_{0}}_{\nabla B \text { drift }}+\underbrace{\frac{1}{B_{0}^{2}} \mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}}_{E \times B \text { drift }} \tag{294}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the curvature drift, $\nabla B$ drift, and $\mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}$ drift can be identified. Note that the perturbed guiding-center velocity $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$ is given by (refer to Sec. D.3)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}=\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \tag{295}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the above results, equation (290) is written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right] \delta f-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right)+\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\left(\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}\right) \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\frac{v_{\|}^{2}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}+\frac{\mu}{\Omega B_{0}} \mathbf{B}_{0} \times \nabla B_{0}+\frac{1}{B_{0}^{2}} \mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\left.\partial F_{(096)} v_{\|} v_{\|}\right)}{2 v_{\|}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Collecting coefficients before $\partial F_{0} / \partial v_{\|}$, we find that the two terms involving $\nabla B_{0}$ (terms in blue and red) cancel each other, yielding

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}\right) \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right] \delta f-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0} \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}}} \\
& =-\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \cdot\left(\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right) \\
& +\frac{q}{m}\left[\frac{m}{q} v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \cdot\left(\mu \nabla B_{0}\right)+\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{b}+\frac{v_{\|}^{2}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}+\frac{1}{B_{0}^{2}} \mathbf{E}_{0} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}(297}{\partial v_{\|}} v_{\|}^{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

This equation agrees with Eq. (8) in I. Holod's 2009 pop paper (gyro-averaging is wrongly omitted in that paper) and W. Deng's 2011 NF paper. Equation 297) drops all terms higher than $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ and as a result the coefficient before $\partial \delta f / \partial v_{\|}$contains only the mirror force, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d v_{\|}}{d t}=-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B_{0} \tag{298}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is independent of any perturbations.

## D Transform gyrokinetic equation from $(\delta \Phi, \delta \mathbf{A})$ to $(\delta \mathbf{E}, \delta \mathbf{B})$

## D. 1 Expression of $\delta B_{\perp}$ in terms of $\delta A$

Note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} & =\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}-\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}\right) \mathbf{e}_{\|} \\
& =\nabla \times\left(\delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right)-\left[\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times\left(\delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right)\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|} \tag{299}
\end{align*}
$$

Correct to order $O(\lambda), \delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}$ in the above equation is written as ( $\mathbf{e}_{\|}$vector can be considered as constant because its spatial gradient combined with $\delta \mathbf{A}$ will give terms of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$, which are neglected)

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} & \approx \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\nabla \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}-\left[\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot\left(\nabla \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right)\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|}  \tag{300}\\
& =\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\nabla \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}-\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right) \mathbf{e}_{\|} \tag{301}
\end{align*}
$$

Using local cylindrical coordinates $(r, \phi, z)$ with $z$ being along the local direction of $\mathbf{B}_{0}$, and two components of $\mathbf{A}_{\perp}$ being $A_{r}$ and $A_{\phi}$, then $\nabla \times \mathbf{A}_{\perp}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}=\left(-\frac{\partial \delta A_{\phi}}{\partial z}\right) \mathbf{e}_{r}+\left(\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial z}\right) \mathbf{e}_{\phi}+\frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \delta A_{\phi}\right)-\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial \phi}\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|} . \tag{302}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the parallel gradient operator $\nabla_{\|} \equiv \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla=\partial / \partial z$ acting on the the perturbed quantities will result in quantities of order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. Retaining terms of order up to $O(\lambda)$, equation (302) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp} \approx \frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \delta A_{\phi}\right)-\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial \phi}\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|}, \tag{303}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., only the parallel component survive, which exactly cancels the last term in Eq. 301, i.e., equation (301) is reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}=\nabla \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|} \tag{304}
\end{equation*}
$$

## D. 2 Expression of $\delta B_{\|}$in terms of $\delta A$

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta B_{\|} & =\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A} \\
& =\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times\left(\delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\delta A_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \tag{305}
\end{align*}
$$

Accurate to $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right), \delta B_{\|}$in the above equation is written as ( $\mathbf{e}_{\|}$vector can be considered as constant because its spatial gradient combined with $\delta \mathbf{A}$ will give $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ terms, which are neglected)

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta B_{\|} & \approx \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot\left(\nabla \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \\
& =\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp} \tag{306}
\end{align*}
$$

[Using local cylindrical coordinates $(r, \phi, z)$ with $z$ being along the local direction of $\mathbf{B}_{0}$, and two components of $\delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}$ being $\delta A_{r}$ and $\delta A_{\phi}$, then $\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}$ is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}=\left(-\frac{\partial \delta A_{\phi}}{\partial z}\right) \mathbf{e}_{r}+\left(\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial z}\right) \mathbf{e}_{r}+\frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \delta A_{\phi}\right)-\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial \phi}\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|} \tag{307}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the parallel gradient operator $\nabla_{\|} \equiv \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla=\partial / \partial z$ acting on the the perturbed quantities will result in quantities of order $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. Retaining terms of order up to $O(\lambda)$, equation (302) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp} \approx \frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \delta A_{\phi}\right)-\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial \phi}\right] \mathbf{e}_{\|}, \tag{308}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this, equation (306) is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta B_{\|}=\frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \delta A_{\phi}\right)-\frac{\partial \delta A_{r}}{\partial \phi}\right] \tag{309}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, this expression is not useful for GEM because GEM does not use the local coordinates $(r, \phi, z)$.]

## D. 3 Expressing the perturbed drift in terms of $\delta E$ and $\delta B$

The perturbed drift $\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}$ is given by Eq. 131, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}=-\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} . \tag{310}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using $\delta L=\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}$, the above expression can be further written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}= & -\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi-\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \\
= & \frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\left\langle v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& -\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} . \tag{311}
\end{align*}
$$

Accurate to order $O(\lambda)$, the term involving $\delta \Phi$ is

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha} & =\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}} \times\left\langle\nabla_{X} \delta \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}} \times\left\langle\nabla_{x} \delta \Phi\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}} \times\left\langle-\delta \mathbf{E}-\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}} \times\langle-\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \equiv \delta \mathbf{V}_{E} \tag{312}
\end{align*}
$$

which is the $\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}_{0}$ drift. Accurate to $O(\lambda)$, the $\left\langle v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}$ term on the right-hand side of Eq. (311) is written

$$
\begin{align*}
-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\left\langle v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & \approx-\frac{q}{m} \frac{1}{\Omega}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{\mathbf{X}}\left(v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m} \frac{1}{\Omega}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{\mathbf{x}}\left(v_{\|} \delta A_{\|}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m} \frac{v_{\|}}{\Omega}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{\mathbf{x}}\left(\delta A_{\|}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \tag{313}
\end{align*}
$$

which is due to the magnetic fluttering (this is actually not a real drift). In obtaining the last equality, use has been made of Eq. (304), i.e., $\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}=\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \delta A_{\|} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}$.

Accurate to $O(\lambda)$, the last term on the right-hand side of expression 311) is written

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & \approx-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{X}\left(\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \nabla_{x}\left(\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times\left(\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \times \nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}+\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{x} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& =-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{x} \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right) \mathbf{v}_{\perp}+\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{x} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}
\end{aligned}
$$

Using equation (306), i.e., $\delta B_{\|}=\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}$, the above expression is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} & =-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}+\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{x} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}+\mathbf{e}_{\|} \times \mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}-\frac{1}{B_{0}} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \times\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx-\frac{1}{B_{0}}\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{314}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \approx 0\left({ }^{* *}\right.$ seems wrong**), where the error is of $O(\lambda) \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}$. The term $\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha} / B_{0}$ is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ and thus can be neglected (I need to verify this).

Using Eqs. (312), 313), and (314), expression (311) is finally written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \mathbf{V}_{D} \equiv-\frac{q}{m} \nabla_{X}\langle\delta L\rangle_{\alpha} \times \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}=\frac{\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \tag{315}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this, the first equation of the characteristics, equation 128), is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d \mathbf{X}}{d t} & =v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\delta \mathbf{V}_{D}  \tag{316}\\
& =v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\frac{\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}} \\
& \equiv \mathbf{V}_{G} \tag{317}
\end{align*}
$$

## D. 4 Expressing the coefficient before $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ in terms of $\delta E$ and $\delta B$

[Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp}}{\partial t}=-\left(\delta \mathbf{E}_{\perp}+\nabla_{\perp} \delta \Phi\right) \tag{318}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\partial \delta \mathbf{A}_{\perp} / \partial t$ is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$. This means that $\delta \mathbf{E}_{\perp}+\nabla_{\perp} \delta \phi$ is of $O\left(\lambda^{2}\right)$ although both $\delta \mathbf{E}_{\perp}$ and $\delta \phi$ are of $O(\lambda)$.]

Note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} & =v_{\|} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{\partial\langle\delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} \\
& =v_{\|} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot(-\delta \mathbf{E}-\nabla \delta \Phi)\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
& \approx v_{\|} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \tag{319}
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla \delta \phi\right\rangle \approx 0$, This indicates that $\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}$ is of $O\left(\lambda^{1}\right) \delta \mathbf{E}$. Using

Eq. (319), the coefficient before $\partial F_{0} / \partial \varepsilon$ in Eq. 147) can be further written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[-\frac{\partial\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\langle\delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}\left[-v_{\|} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \cdot\left\langle-\delta \mathbf{E}-\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m}\left[-v_{\|} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t}+\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}-\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \cdot\langle-\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha}+v_{\|}\left\langle\frac{\partial A_{\|}}{\partial t}\right\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \\
& =-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\Omega} \times \nabla_{X}\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot \delta \mathbf{A}\rangle_{\alpha}\right) \cdot\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \\
& \approx-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha}\right] . \tag{320}
\end{align*}
$$

Using Eq. 320 and (), gyrokinetic equation 147) is finally written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+\frac{\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta f} \\
& =-\left(\frac{\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& -\frac{q}{m}\left[\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{V}_{D}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\langle\delta \mathbf{E}\rangle_{\alpha}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{321}
\end{align*}
$$

## E Drift-kinetic limit

In the drift-kinetic limit, $\left\langle\mathbf{v}_{\perp} \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=0,\left\langle\delta B_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}=0$, and $\langle\delta h\rangle_{\alpha}=\delta h$, where $\delta h$ is an arbitrary field quantity. Using these, gyrokinetic equation (321) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta f} \\
& =-\left(\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{322}
\end{align*}
$$

## E. 1 Linear case

Neglecting the nonlinear terms, drift-kinetic equation 322 is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\right] \delta f} \\
& =-\left(\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{323}
\end{align*}
$$

Next let us derive the parallel momentum equation from the linear drift kinetic equation (this is needed in my simulation). Multiplying the linear drift kinetic equation (323) by $q v_{\|}$and then integrating over velocity space, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t} & =-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f \\
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}-\frac{q}{m} q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} . \tag{324}
\end{align*}
$$

Equation (324) involve $\nabla_{X} \delta f$ and this should be avoided in particle methods whose goal is to avoid directly evaluating the derivatives of $\delta f$ over phase-space coordinates. On the other hand, the partial derivatives of velocity moment of $\delta f$ are allowed. Therefore, we would like to make the velocity integration of $\delta f$ appear. Note that $\nabla_{X} \delta f$ here is taken by holding $(\varepsilon, \mu)$ constant and thus $v_{\|}$is not a constant and thus can not be moved inside $\nabla_{X}$. Next, to facilitate performing the integration over $v_{\|}$, we transform the linear drift kinetic equation 323 into variable ( $\mathbf{X}, \mu, v_{\|}$).

## E. 2 Transform from $(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon)$ to $\left(\mathbf{X}, \mu, v_{\|}\right)$coordinates

The kinetic equation given above is written in terms of variable $(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon)$. Next, we transform it into coordinates $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu^{\prime}, v_{\|}\right)$which is defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{X}^{\prime}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon) & =\mathbf{X}  \tag{325}\\
\mu^{\prime}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon) & =\mu \tag{326}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{\|}(\mathbf{X}, \mu, \varepsilon)=\sqrt{2\left(\varepsilon-\mu B_{0}(\mathbf{X})\right)} \tag{327}
\end{equation*}
$$

Use this, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}\right|_{\mu, \varepsilon} & =\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial \mu^{\prime}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& =\left.\frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}}\right|_{\mu, v_{\|}}+0 \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}-\frac{\mu}{v_{\|}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{d \mathbf{X}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \tag{328}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \varepsilon} & =\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mu^{\prime}} \frac{\partial \mu^{\prime}}{\partial \varepsilon}+\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =0 \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial \mu^{\prime}}+\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \varepsilon} \\
& =\frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}} \tag{329}
\end{align*}
$$

Then, in terms of variable $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\prime}, \mu, v_{\|}\right)$, equation $\sqrt{323}$ is written

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla \delta f-\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& =-\left(\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla F_{0}+\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{E}}{v_{\|}}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}}-\frac{q}{m}\left[\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{D}}{v_{\|}}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}(330)}{\partial v_{\|}}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\nabla \equiv \partial /\left.\partial \mathbf{X}^{\prime}\right|_{\mu, v_{\|}}$.

## E. 3 Parallel momentum equation

Multiplying the linear drift kinetic equation (330) by $q v_{\|}$and then integrating over velocity space, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}+q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& =-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(\mathbf{v}_{E}+v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}+q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(\frac{\mathbf{v}_{E}}{v_{\|}}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& -\frac{q}{m} q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left[\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|}+\frac{\mathbf{v}_{D}}{v_{\|}}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \tag{331}
\end{align*}
$$

Consider the simple case that $F_{0}$ does not carry current, i.e., $F_{0}\left(\mathbf{X}, \mu, v_{\|}\right)$is an even function about $v_{\|}$. Then it is obvious that the integration of the terms in red in Eq. (331) are all zero. Among the rest terms, only the following term

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{q}{m} q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}} \tag{332}
\end{equation*}
$$

explicitly depends on $\delta \mathbf{E}$. Using $d \mathbf{v}=2 \pi B d v_{\|} d \mu$, the integration in the above expression can be analytically performed, giving

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\frac{q}{m} q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left[\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \delta \mathbf{E}\right] \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \frac{1}{v_{\|}} \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{m} \int 2 \pi B d v_{\|} d \mu v_{\|} \delta E_{\|} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{m} \int 2 \pi B d \mu \delta E_{\|} \int v_{\|} \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} d v_{\|} \\
& =-\frac{q^{2}}{m} \int 2 \pi B d \mu \delta E_{\|}\left(0-\int F_{0} d v_{\|}\right) \\
& =\frac{q^{2}}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{0} . \tag{333}
\end{align*}
$$

Using these results, the parallel momentum equation 331 is written

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}= & \frac{q^{2}}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{0}-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f+q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial \delta f}{\partial v_{\|}} \\
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla F_{0}+q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \mu \nabla B \frac{\partial F_{0}}{\partial v_{\|}} \tag{334}
\end{align*}
$$

where the explicit dependence on $\delta \mathbf{E}$ is via the first term $q^{2} n_{0} \delta E_{\|} / m$, with all the the other terms being explicitly independent of $\delta \mathbf{E}$ ( $\delta f$ and $\delta \mathbf{B}$ implicitly depend on $\delta \mathbf{E}$ ).

Equation (334) involve derivatives of $\delta f$ with respect to space and $v_{\|}$and these should be avoided in the particle method whose goal is to avoid directly evaluating these derivatives. Using integration by parts, the terms involving $\partial / \partial v_{\|}$can be simplified, yielding

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}= & \frac{q^{2}}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{0}-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f-q\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla B_{0}\right) \int \mu \delta f d \mathbf{v} \\
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla F_{0}-q\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\left(\nabla B_{0}\right) \int \mu F_{0} d \mathbf{v} \tag{335}
\end{align*}
$$

Define $p_{\perp 0}=\int m v_{\perp}^{2} F_{0} / 2 d \mathbf{v}$ and $\delta p_{\perp}=\int m v_{\perp}^{2} \delta f / 2 d \mathbf{v}$, then the above equation is written

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}= & \frac{q^{2}}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{0}-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}+\mathbf{v}_{D}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f-q\left(\mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla B_{0}\right) \frac{\delta p_{\perp}}{m B_{0}} \\
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla F_{0}-q\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\left(\nabla B_{0}\right) \frac{p_{\perp 0}}{m B_{0}} \tag{336}
\end{align*}
$$

Next, we try to eliminate the spatial gradient of $\delta f$ by changing the order of integration. The second term on the right-hand side of Eq. (336) is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f \\
& =-q \int 2 \pi B_{0} d v_{\|} d \mu v_{\|}^{2} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f \\
& =-q 2 \pi B_{0} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X} \int v_{\|}^{2} \delta f d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =-q B_{0} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{m B_{0}} \int m v_{\|}^{2} \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right) \\
& =-q B_{0} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{\delta p_{\|}}{m B_{0}}\right) \tag{337}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\delta p_{\|}=\int m v_{\|}^{2} \delta f d \mathbf{v}$. Similarly, the term $-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0}$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
& -q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& =-q \int 2 \pi B_{0} d v_{\|} d \mu\left(v_{\|}^{2} \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} F_{0} \\
& =-q\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot B_{0} \nabla_{X} \int\left(v_{\|}^{2} F_{0} 2 \pi d v_{\|} d \mu\right) \\
& =-q\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot B_{0} \nabla_{X}\left[\frac{1}{B} \int\left(m v_{\|}^{2} F_{0} d \mathbf{v}\right)\right] \\
& =-q \delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{m B_{0}}\right) \tag{338}
\end{align*}
$$

where $p_{\| 0}=\int m v_{\|}^{2} F_{0} d \mathbf{v}$. Similarly, the term $-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f$ can be written as the gradient of moments of $\delta f$. Let us work on this. The drift $\mathbf{v}_{D}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{v}_{D}=\frac{B_{0} \frac{v_{\|}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{\|}^{\star}} v_{\|}+\frac{\mu}{\Omega B_{\|}^{\star}} \mathbf{B}_{0} \times \nabla B_{0} . \tag{339}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $B_{\|}^{\star}=B_{0}\left(1+\frac{v_{\|}}{\Omega} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b}\right)$ (refer to my another notes). Using $\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b} \approx 0$, we obtain $B_{\|}^{\star} \approx B$. Then $\mathbf{v}_{D}$ is written

$$
\mathbf{v}_{D}=\frac{v_{\|}^{2}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}+\frac{\mu}{\Omega} \mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}
$$

Using this and $d \mathbf{v}=2 \pi B_{0} d v_{\|} d \mu$, the term $-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f$ is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
-q \int d \mathbf{v} v_{\|} \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f & =-q \int 2 \pi B_{0} d v_{\|} d \mu v_{\|}\left(\frac{v_{\|}^{2}}{\Omega} \nabla \times \mathbf{b}+\frac{\mu}{\Omega} \mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \delta f \\
& =-q 2 \pi B_{0} \frac{1}{\Omega}(\nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \nabla_{X} \int v_{\|}^{3} \delta f d v_{\|} d \mu-q 2 \pi B_{0} \frac{1}{\Omega}\left(\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X} \int v_{\|} \mu \delta f d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =-q B_{0} \frac{1}{\Omega}(\nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|}^{3} \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right)-q B_{0} \frac{1}{\Omega}\left(\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|} \mu \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right), \\
& =-m(\nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|}^{3} \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right)-m\left(\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|} \mu \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right), \tag{340}
\end{align*}
$$

which are the third order moments of $\delta f$ and may be neglect-able (a guess, not verified). Using the above results, the linear parallel momentum equation is finally written

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}= & \frac{e^{2} n_{e 0}}{m} \delta E_{\|}+e B_{0} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{\delta p_{\|}}{m B_{0}}\right)+e\left(\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla B_{0}\right) \frac{\delta p_{\perp}}{m B_{0}} \\
& +e \delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{m B_{0}}\right)+e\left(\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot\left(\nabla B_{0}\right) \frac{p_{\perp 0}}{m B_{0}} . \\
& -m(\nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|}^{3} \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right)-m\left(\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|} \mu \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right)(3 \tag{341}
\end{align*}
$$

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{D}_{0}=\nabla\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{m B_{0}}\right)+\frac{\nabla B_{0}}{B_{0}} \frac{p_{\perp 0}}{m B_{0}} \tag{342}
\end{equation*}
$$

which, for the isotropic case $\left(p_{\| 0}=p_{\perp 0}=p_{0}\right)$, is simplified to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{D}_{0}=\frac{\nabla p_{0}}{m B_{0}} \tag{343}
\end{equation*}
$$

then Eq. (341) is written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t} & =\frac{e^{2} n_{0}}{m} \delta E_{\|}+e \delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{D}_{0} \\
& +e B_{0} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{\delta p_{\|}}{m B_{0}}\right)+e\left(\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla B_{0}\right) \frac{\delta p_{\perp}}{m B_{0}} \\
& -m(\nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|}^{3} \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right)-m\left(\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\frac{1}{B_{0}} \int v_{\|} \mu \delta f d \mathbf{v}\right) . \tag{344}
\end{align*}
$$

## E. 4 Special case in uniform magnetic field

In the case of uniform magnetic field, the parallel momentum equation 341 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \delta j_{\|}}{\partial t}=\frac{q}{m} q E_{\|} n_{e 0}-q \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\delta p_{\|}\right)-q \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla_{X} p_{\| 0} \tag{345}
\end{equation*}
$$

## E. 5 Electron perpendicular flow

Using the gyrokinetic theory and taking the drift-kinetic limit, the perturbed perpendicular electron flow, $\delta \mathbf{V}_{e \perp}$, is written (see Sec. B or Appendix in Yang Chen's paper [2])

$$
\begin{equation*}
n_{e 0} \delta \mathbf{V}_{e \perp}=\underbrace{\frac{n_{e 0}}{B_{0}} \delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}_{E \times B \text { flow }}-\underbrace{\frac{1}{e B_{0}} \mathbf{b} \times \nabla \delta p_{\perp e}}_{\text {diamagnetic flow }} \tag{346}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $n_{e 0}$ is the equilibrium electron number density, $\delta p_{e \perp}$ is the perturbed perpendicular pressure of electrons.

## E.5.1 Drift kinetic equation

Drift kinetic equation is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}+\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla f+\left(-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|}-\mu \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B\right) \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\|}}=0 \tag{347}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f=f\left(\mathbf{x}, \mu, v_{\|}, t\right), \mu=m v_{\perp}^{2} / B_{0}$ is the magnetic moment, $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}=\mathbf{b}+\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp} / B_{0}, \mathbf{b}=\mathbf{B}_{0} / B_{0}$ is the unit vector along the equilibrium magnetic field, $\mathbf{v}_{D}=\mathbf{v}_{D}\left(\mathbf{x}, \mu, v_{\|}\right)$is the guiding-center drift in the equilibrium magnetic field. $\delta \mathbf{E}$ and $\delta \mathbf{B}$ are the perturbed electric field and magnetic field, respectively.

## E.5.2 Parallel momentum equation

Multiplying the drift kinetic equation () by $v_{\|}$and then integrating over velocity space, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int \frac{\partial f_{e} v_{\|}}{\partial t} d \mathbf{v}+\int v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla f_{e} d \mathbf{v}+\int v_{\|}\left(-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|}-\mu \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B\right) \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} d \mathbf{v}=0 \tag{348}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial J_{\| e}}{\partial t}+\int v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla f_{e} d \mathbf{v}+\int v_{\|}\left(-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|}-\mu \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B\right) \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} d \mathbf{v}=0 \tag{349}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using $d \mathbf{v}=B^{-1} 2 \pi m d v_{\|} d \mu$, the last term on the RHS of the above equation is written

$$
\begin{align*}
& \iint v_{\|}\left(-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|}-\mu \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B\right) \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\iint v_{\|}\left(-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|}-\mu \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B\right) \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \iint v_{\|} \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} d v_{\|} d \mu-(\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \int \mu \int v_{\|} \frac{\partial f_{e}}{\partial v_{\|}} d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \int\left(\left.v_{\|} f_{e}\right|_{-\infty} ^{+\infty}-\int f_{e} d v_{\|}\right) d \mu-(\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \int \mu\left(\left.v_{\|} f_{e}\right|_{-\infty} ^{+\infty}-\int f_{e} d v_{\|}\right) d \mu \\
& =\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \iint f_{e} d v_{\|} d \mu+(\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} \int \mu \int f_{e} d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{e}+\iint \mu(\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla B) f_{e} d \mathbf{v}  \tag{350}\\
& \approx \frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{e}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \iint v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}\right) \cdot \nabla f_{e} d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\iint \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|}^{2} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v} \\
& =\iint \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|}^{2} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu \\
& =\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\iint v_{\|}^{2} f_{e} 2 \pi \frac{1}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu\right) B_{0} \\
& =\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0} \\
& =\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}+\delta p_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0} \\
& =\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0}+\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{\delta p_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0} \\
& \approx \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\| 0}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0}+\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{\delta p_{\|}}{B_{0}}\right) B_{0} \\
& \approx \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(p_{\| 0}\right)+\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(p_{\| 0}\right)+\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\delta p_{\|}\right)  \tag{351}\\
& =\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(p_{\| 0}\right)+\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\delta p_{\|}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

where use has been made of $\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla p_{\| 0}=0$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \delta J_{e \|}}{\partial t}=-\frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{e}-\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(p_{\| 0}\right)-\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\delta p_{\|}\right) \tag{352}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Eq. () in Eq. (), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{0} e \frac{e}{m} \delta E_{\|} n_{e}+\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{E}=-\mu_{0} e\left[\frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(p_{e \| 0}\right)+\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla\left(\delta p_{e \|}\right)\right] \tag{353}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{E}=-\mu_{0} e\left(-q \frac{\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla_{X} p_{\| 0}+\frac{q}{m} q E_{\|} n_{e 0}-q \mathbf{e}_{\|} \cdot \nabla_{X}\left(\delta p_{\|}\right)\right) . \tag{354}
\end{equation*}
$$

ddddd
$\iint v_{\|}\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla f_{e} d \mathbf{v}$
$=\iint\left(v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}+\mathbf{v}_{D}+\frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}}\right) \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}$
$=\iint v_{\|} \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}+\iint \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}$
$=\iint \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|}^{2} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}+\iint \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) d \mathbf{v}$
$=\iint \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|}^{2} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu+\iint \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu$
$=\int \tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|}^{2} f_{e} 2 \pi \frac{1}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu\right) B+\iint \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu$
$=\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\|}}{B}\right) B+\iint \mathbf{v}_{D} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu$
$=\tilde{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla\left(\frac{p_{\|}}{B}\right) B+\iint \frac{1}{m \Omega} \mathbf{b} \times(\mu \nabla B) \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu+\iint \frac{1}{m \Omega} \mathbf{b} \times\left(m v_{\|}^{2} \boldsymbol{\kappa}\right) \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu$
$+\iint \frac{\delta \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{b}}{B_{0}} \cdot \nabla\left(v_{\|} f_{e}\right) 2 \pi \frac{B}{m} d v_{\|} d \mu$

## F Derivation of Eq. (111), not finished

From the definition of $\mu$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=-\frac{v_{\perp}^{2}}{2 B_{0}^{2}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}+\frac{1}{2 B_{0}} \frac{\partial v_{\perp}^{2}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=-\frac{\mu}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \tag{355}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=\frac{\partial\left[\mathbf{v}-v_{\|} \mathbf{e}_{\|}\right]}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=-v_{\|} \frac{\partial \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}-\frac{\partial v_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \mathbf{e}_{\|} \tag{356}
\end{equation*}
$$

expression 355 is written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}}=-\frac{\mu}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}-v_{\|} \frac{\partial \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}} \tag{357}
\end{equation*}
$$

which agrees with Eq. (10) in Frieman-Chen's paper [3].

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{v} \cdot\left(-\frac{\mu}{B_{0}} \frac{\partial B_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}-v_{\|} \frac{\partial \mathbf{e}_{\|}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\perp}}{B_{0}}\right) \\
& =? 0 \\
& \quad \frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right] \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the fact that $\delta G_{0}$ is independent of $\alpha$, the left-hand side of Eq. 111) is written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\langle\mathbf{v} \cdot\left[\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 1}+\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{B 2}\right] \delta G_{0}\right\rangle_{\alpha} \\
= & \frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{v} \cdot\left\{\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right] \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}+\frac{\partial \alpha}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \alpha}\right\} \\
= & \frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} d \alpha \mathbf{v} \cdot\left\{\left[\mathbf{v} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\frac{\boldsymbol{e}_{\|}}{\Omega}\right)\right] \cdot \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mathbf{X}}+\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial \delta G_{0}}{\partial \mu}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

## G Modern view of gyrokinetic equation **wrong**

The modern form of the nonlinear gyrokinetic equation is in the total-f form. This way of deriving the gyrokinetic equation is to use transformation methods to eliminate gyro-phase dependence of the total distribution function and thus obtain an equation for the resulting gyro-phase independent distribution function (called gyro-center distribution function).

The resulting equation for the gyro-center distribution function is given by (see Baojian's paper)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}+\dot{\mathbf{X}} \cdot \nabla+\dot{v}_{\|} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\|}}\right) f\left(\mathbf{X}, v_{\|}, \mu, t\right)=0 \tag{358}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gather*}
\dot{\mathbf{R}}=\mathbf{V}_{D}+\frac{\mathbf{e}_{\|}}{B_{0}} \times\langle\nabla \delta \Phi\rangle_{\alpha}+v_{\|} \frac{\left\langle\delta \mathbf{B}_{\perp}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{B_{0}}  \tag{359}\\
\dot{v}_{\|}=-\frac{1}{m} \frac{\mathbf{B}^{\star}}{B_{\|}^{\star}} \cdot\left(q \nabla\langle\delta \Phi\rangle+\mu \nabla B_{0}\right)-\frac{q}{m} \frac{\partial\left\langle\delta A_{\|}\right\rangle_{\alpha}}{\partial t} . \tag{360}
\end{gather*}
$$

Here the independent variables are gyro-center position $\mathbf{X}$, magnetic moment $\mu$ and parallel velocity $v_{\|}$.

The gyro-phase dependence of the particle distribution can be recovered by the inverse transformation of the transformation used before. The pull-back transformation gives rise to the polarization density term. (phase-space-Lagrangian Lie perturbation method (Littlejohn, 1982a, 1983), I need to read these two papers.).

## H About this document

These notes were initially written when I visited University of Colorado at Boulder (Sept.-Nov. 2016), where I worked with Dr. Yang Chen, who pointed out that most gyrokinetic simulations essentially employ Frieman-Chen's nonlinear gyrokinetic equation. Therefore a careful re-derivation of the equation to know the gyrokinetic orderings and physics included in the model is highly desirable, which motivates me to write this note.

This document was written by using TeXmacs [4, a structured wysiwyw (what you see is what you want) editor for scientists. The HTML version of this document is generated by first converting the TeXmacs file to TeX format and then using htlatex to convert the TeX file to HTML format.

## References

[1] P J Catto. Linearized gyro-kinetics. Plasma Physics, 20(7):719, 1978.
[2] Yang Chen and Scott E. Parker. Particle-in-cell simulation with vlasov ions and drift kinetic electrons. Phys. Plasmas, 16:52305, 2009.
[3] E. A. Frieman and Liu Chen. Nonlinear gyrokinetic equations for low-frequency electromagnetic waves in general plasma equilibria. Physics of Fluids, 25(3):502-508, 1982.
[4] Joris van der Hoeven. Gnu texmacs, a structured wysiwyw (what you see is what you want) editor for scientists. http://www.texmacs.org/, 2007. [Online].

